Unit 1: Reach for the Stars



Tape script

Interviewer	: Thank you for coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
Astronaut	: Well, this is a very special week for me. Tomorrow afternoon, I'm travelling with two other astronauts to a secret location. The launch is at 7.50 the next evening.
Interviewer	: How exciting! Will this be the first time you've been in space?
Astronaut	: Yes it will. I'm really looking forward to it.
Interviewer	: What is your mission, exactly?
Astronaut	: We have to repair equipment on the international Space Station.
Interviewer	: What's the problem?
Astronaut	: There are two or three things we need to look at, but the main problem is the temperature control system. We think there may be a leak of some kind.
Interviewer	: Is that a difficult job?
Astronaut	: No, not particularly, but we'll almost certainly need to spend some time working outside.
Interviewer	: Do you mean a spacewalk?
Astronaut	: Yes, maybe, but we won't know for sure until we're there and can examine the equipment properly.
Interviewer	: Isn't that really dangerous?
Astronaut	: Not really – we've had a lot of training and of course we're going to be very careful.
Interviewer	: How long will you be in space for?
Astronaut	: We'll probably be there for about five or six days. It depends on how serious the problems are.
Interviewer	: That's very exciting. Thank you for talking to us. And good luck with your mission!
Astronaut	: Thank you.

Space technology

July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man first walking on the Moon. Ever since that day, we have been promised that holidays in space are not far away. Now a representative for the World Tourism Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be queuing to book their holidays in space. They will fly by rocket to a space station which will be orbiting the Earth at a height of 320 kilometers - that is about the same as the distance from Cairo to El-Minya. The space station itself will be like a giant spinning wheel with spokes like a bike wheel. There will be two kinds of spokes: those with ordinary gravity and those with zero gravity for weightless sports.

Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that, as space tourists, they will suffer from the same horrible side effects as astronauts have suffered from, but experts say that there are now treatments for most side effects.

Just think about such a holiday in space. Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magic feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins below you. It will

01000453264 01287277089

be impossible to go shopping or go for walk, but think of the fun you can have with weightless football or weightless gymnastics.

For most people, the main disadvantage at the moment is the cost of space holidays. Currently, the cost of a holiday is very high; But, like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now

Key Vocabulary

examine	يفحص	gravity	جاذبية / خطورة
launch	يطلق / اطلاق	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
leak	تسرب رشح /	side effects	آثار جانبية
mission	مهمة / بعثة / مأمورية	spin (v)	يدور بسرعة (حول نفسه)
secret	سر / سرى	spoke (n)	سلك العجلة
system	نظام	distance	مسافة / بعد
currently	حاليا / فى الوقت الحالى	weightless	عديم الوزن
location	موقع	weightlessness	انعدام الوزن
space shuttle	مكوك فضاء	orbit	يدور حول (شئ)

Vocabulary

astronaut	رائد فضاء	steam	بخار
benefit	يُفيد / يستفيد / فائدة	lake	بحيرة
repair (n.& v.)	إصلاح / ترميم يُصلِح / يرمِّم	lift	يرفع
equipment	معدات / أجهزة	timetable	جدول أعمال
space station	محطة فضاء	arrange	يرتب
main	رئيسى	arrangement	ترتيب
temperature	درجة الحرارة	plan	يخطط / خطة
control system	نظام التحكم	predict	يتنبأ بـ
particularly	بصفة خاصة / خصوصا	prediction	تنبؤ
properly	كما ينبغى	apply	يتقدم بطلب
training	تدريب	frightening	مخيف
serious	جاد / خطير	physical exercises	تمارين بدنية
spacecraft	سفينة فضاء	movement	حركة
hole	ثقب / خرم / فتحة	perform	يؤدى / ينجز
liquid	سائل	thin	نحيف / رفيع
organised	منظم	metal bar	قضيب معدنى
damage	يدمر / دمار	ring	دائرة
air conditioning	تكييف الهواء	wheel	عجلة (دراجة / عربة)
password	كلمة سر	unexpected	غير متوقع
replace	يستبدل / يحل محل	result	نتيجة
fuel pump	مضخة الوقود	activity	نشاط
sat-nav	الملاحة الفضائية	match (v)	يناسب (المقاس)
deaf	أصم	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية
objects	أشياء	muscle atrophy	ضمور العضلات
representative	مندوب / ممثل	deterioration	انهيار / تدهور
space tourism	سياحة الفضاء	blood cells	خلايا الدم
organisation	منظمة	weakness	ضعف / وهن
giant	عملاق	immune system	جهاز المناعة
spinning	لف / دوران	improve	يحسن / يتحسن
ordinary	عادى	transport	النقل / المواصلات

01000453264 01287277089

zero gravity	انعدام الجاذبية	communications	اتصالات
weightless sports	رياضة انعدام الوزن	sources	مصادر
horrible	فظيع / مريع / رهيب	minerals	معادن
expert	خبير	satellite	قمر صناعى / قمر تابع
describe	يصف	medical test	اختبار طبى
magic	سحرى / رائع	surgery	جراحة / عيادة
disadvantage	عيب	available	متاح / متوافر
cost	يكلف / تكلفة	space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
decrease	يقلل	e-learning	التعلم الاليكترونى
amount	كمية	fields	مجالات / حقول
especially	بصفة خاصة / خصوصا	security	أمن
float	يَعوم / يطفو / يسبح	instant	عاجل / لحظة
initial	أولى / مبدئى	a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
nausea	غثيان	climate change	تغير المناخ
vomiting	قئ / استفراغ	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
dizziness	دوار / دوخة	education	التعليم
headache	صداع	step	خطوة
lethargy	كسل / خمول	questionnaire	استبيان / استطلاع رأى

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

launch a ship	يطلق سفينة	send ... into space	يرسل .... الى الفضاء
launch a rocket	يطلق صاروخ	pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان
examine a patient	يفحص مريض	turn around	يستدير
a leak in a cup	تسرب فى كوب	go on a mission	يذهب فى مهمة
a leak in a tap	تسرب فى حنفية	walk on the moon	يمشى على القمر
a leak in a tank	تسرب فى خزان	book a holiday	يحجز اجازة
reach for the stars	الوصول الى النجوم	by rocket	بالصاروخ
cope with	يتغلب على	depend on	يعتمد على
do a repair	يرمم	on a radio programme	فى برنامج اذاعى
look for	يبحث عن	take off	تُقلع (الطائرة)
look after	يعتنى بـ	There's a problem with	هناك مشكلة فى
walk around	يتجول ماشيا حول	at a height of	على ارتفاع
land on the moon	يهبط على القمر	interested in	مهتم بـ
go on space holidays	يقوم بأجازة في الفضاء	suffer from	يعانى من
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	look down on	ينظر من أعلى الي
do space walks	يتمشى فى الفضاء	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
be attached to	مرتبط بـ / مرفق مع	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضات انعدام الوزن	go down	ينخفض / يقل
worry about	يقلق على	do gymnastics	يمارس ألعاب الجمباز
break down	يتعطل	take someone out	يأخذ شخص للخارج
make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
refer to	يشير الى	land on the moon	يهبط على القمر
the distance from .. to	المسافة من..إلي	compare ... to	يقارن ..... بـ
get together	يتقابل	queue up	يصطف في طابور
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	benefit from	يستفيد من
treatment for	علاج لـ	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	agree with	يتفق مع
discuss ..... with	يناقش ...... مع	fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض

connect to	يوصل بـ	stand still	يقف بلا حراك
Good luck with..	حظ سعيد في..	have fun with	يجد متعة في..
apply for a job	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	go up	يزداد / يرتفع

Definitions

Examine يفحص	look at something carefully in order to find out something
Launch يطلق	when a spacecraft is sent into space
Leak تسرب	A small hole that liquid or gas gets out through
Mission مهمة / بعثة	An important job that someone has been given to do
Secret سرى	Known about by only a few people
System نظام	An organized way of doing something
Currently حاليا	At the present time
Gravity جاذبية	What makes objects fall to the ground
Gymnastics ألعاب الجمباز	A sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed
Spin يدور بسرعة	Turn around and around very quickly
Spoke سلك العجلة	A thin metal bar which connects the ring around the outside of a wheel to the centre
Distance مسافة	The amount of space between two places
Weightless عديم الوزن	Having no weight, especially when traveling

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word الكلمة		Antonym العكس	
secret	سرى	known	معروف
repair	يصلح	destroy	يدمر
attached	متصل	detached	منفصل
well-trained	مدرب جيدا	badly trained	ذات تدريب سئ
land	يهبط	take off	تقلع (الطائرة)
giant	عملاق	very small	صغير جدا
ordinary	عادى	extraordinary	غير عادى
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
launch ينطلق / يطلق	launch انطلاق / اطلاق	
leak يتسرب	leak تسرب	leaky به تسرب
explore يستكشف	exploration استكشاف	exploratory استكشافى
weigh يزن	weight وزن	weighty ثقيل weightless منعدم الوزن
examine يفحص	examination فحص	examined مفحوص
treat يعالج / يعامل	treatment علاج / معاملة	treatable يمكن علاجه
improve يتحسن / يحسن	improvement تحسين / تحسن	improved محسن

Confusable Words

location	موقع / موضع / مكان
destination	الجهة المقصودة (فى السفر)

Ex: The hotel is in a lovely **location** overlooking the lake.
Our flight will reach our **destination** at 7 p.m.

repair	يقوم باصلاح شئ حدث به تلف أو ضرر
reform	يقوم بعمل تعديل أو تحسين على نظام معين

Ex: Hee went to the garage to **repair** his car.
The government is trying to **reform** our educational system.

explore	يستكشف (مكان / احتمالات)
invent	يخترع (شئ لم يكن له وجود من قبل)
discover	يكتشف (شئ كان موجودا من قبل و لكنه كان مجهولا

Ex: The best way to **explore** the countryside is on foot.
The artificial satellite was **invented** in 1957.
Christopher Columbus **discovered** America.

route	طريق (من مكان الى اخر) / وسيلة (لتحقيق هدف)
road	طريق (سطح صلب طويل ممهد تسير عليه وسائل النقل)

Ex: I live on a bus **route** so I can easily get to work.
Hard work is the best **route** to success.
We live on a quiet **road**.

arrive	يصل (لا يليه مفعول به)
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير محدود)
arrive in	يصل إلى (دولة / عاصمة / مدينة كبيرة)
reach	يصل إلى (يليه مفعول به)

Ex: The plane has just **arrived.**
The plane arrived at **Cairo Airport on time.**
The plane **arrived in** Cairo on time.

I won't **reach** the office till noon today.

reason (n) for	ingسبب / مبرّر(يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهي بـ
reason (n) why	سبب / مبرر (يليها جملة تتكون من فاعل و فعل)
cause (v)	يسبب
cause (n) of	سبب (يليها اسم)

Ex: I don't know the **reason for his failure**.
I don't know the **reason why he failed**.
What **caused** the fire?
What was the **cause of** the fire?

affect (v)	يؤثر على
effect (n)	تأثير

Ex: Smoking **affects health badly**.
Smoking **has a bad effect on health**.

queue = line	طابور (يقف فيه الناس واحدا تلو الآخر)
row	صف (من الناس أو الأشياء جنبا إلى جنب)

Ex: There is a long **queue** in front of the ticket office.
I'd like to sit in the second **row**.

anniversary	ذكرى سنوية
memorial	نصب تذكاري
memory	ذاكرة / ذكرى

Ex: We always celebrate our wedding **anniversary** with dinner in an expensive restaurant.
The statue was erected as a **memorial** to those who died in the war.
She has an excellent **memory** for names.

Language Notes

thank for	ing يشكر على (يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهي بـ

Ex: **Thank** you **for** your **help**.
Thank you **for helping** me.

by	بواسطة (يليها فعل ينتهى بـ ing)

Ex: Mr Yacoub lost weight **by taking** more exercise

look forward to	يتطلع الى (يليها اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ ing)

Ex: I'm **looking forward to my next summer holiday**.
I'm **looking forward to visiting** my relatives in Giza.

spend + مدة زمنية + v. + ing	يقضى ..... فى
spend money on + ing اسم أو فعل ينتهى بـ	ينفق المال على

Ex: She **spent** the evening **writing** invitations to her friends.
She **spent** a lot of money **on** her new clothes.

such a / an + صفة + اسم مفرد	جدا

Ex: It was such an exciting film.

gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز (يليها الفعل فى صيغة المفرد)

Ex: **Gymnastics is** a sport in which physical exercises and movements are performed

The + صيغة مقارنة, the + صيغة مقارنة كلما .... كلما	تستخدم هذه الصيغة عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئا يعتمد على شيء آخر

Ex: **The older** you get, **the more cautious** you become.
The more people want to do something, **the cheaper** it will become.

start / begin + v. + ing / to + مصدر	لكن فى حالة إستخدامهما فى المضارع المستمر نستخدم (to + المصدر)

Ex: It has **started raining**.
It has **started to rain**.
It's **starting to rain**.

a two-hour mission	مهمة لمدة ساعتين

- لاحظ أن two-hour عبارة عن صفة مركبة و الصفة لا تجمع و لذلك لم نجمع كلمة hour

help + مفعول + to + مصدر / مصدر	يساعد ..... فى
help + مفعول + with + اسم	يساعد ..... فى

Ex: The loan from the bank **helped** her **(to) start** her new business.
His father **helped** him **with** the costs of buying a new flat

make + مفعول + مصدر	فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم نستخدم المصدر
be made + to + مصدر	وفى حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم (to + مصدر)

Ex: Mr Yacoub **made us do** the exercise again.
We **were made to do** the exercise again.

01000453264
01287277089

way of + v. + ing way to + مصدر	وسيلة لـ (يليها)(of + v. + ing أوto + (مصدر)

Ex: There are many **ways of solving** the problem.
That's not the **way to do** it - let me show you.

enjoy + v. + ing	يستمتع بـ

Ex: I **enjoy meeting** new people.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1 -A friend asks you why you'd like to be a doctor.
2 - A friend thinks that money is the root of all evil. You agree.
3 - A friend thinks that space exploration is a waste of money. You disagree giving a reason.
4 -A relative wants to know the best thing about your school.
5 -A tourist asks you about the next train to Luxor. Tell him there is one at 10 o'clock.
6 -Someone asks you what you plan to do after school. You intend to go to the library.
7 -Someone thanked you for helping him.
8 -You are against the idea of using nuclear energy.
9 -You are asked about your opinion about space travel. Give a reason for your opinion.
10 -You are asked to express why you do a sport.
11 -You express your opinion about Tuk Tuk giving a reason.
12 -You look at the sky and predict the weather of tomorrow.
13 -You meet your friend on 1st January.
14 -You regretted travelling by car to Aswan.
15 -You tell your friend why you choose Ali as a leader of the team.
16 - You've arranged to have lunch with your brother tomorrow.
17 -Your friend asks you if you would like to be a leader. You say yes and tell him why.
18 -Your friend thinks that people will spend holiday on the moon.
19 -Your teacher asks you why you enjoy learning English.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in ea ch of the following two mini-dialogues

1-A: On which Platform is the train to Aswan? B: Platform No 5
A: Can you carry my bags to the platform, please? B: With pleasure, sir.
Place..................- Speaker A: ....- Speaker B:.................. - Function.................. :

2-A: How do you like this T-shirt? B: It's lovely but I'd rather have it in white.
A: Red is in fashion now? B: But I can't stand it.
A: All right. I'll bring you a white one.
Place: ....- Speaker A: .... - Speaker B:.............. - Function.................... :

3-A: Can I get out for a walk?
B: Yes. But take care. It is wonderful to look down on the Earth that always spins.
A : thanks , sir
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B:.................. - Function........................... :

4-A: What is wrong with you? B: I have a nasty headache.
A : how long have you been suffering from it? B : Two days.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B:.................. - Function........................... :

5-A: Can you show me where I can try this dress on? B: The fitting rooms are on the left over there.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B:.................. - Function........................... :

6- A : Have you repaired my watch?
B : Sorry, we haven't finished repairing it. You can collect it tomorrow.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B:................. - Function........................... :

01000453264 01287277089

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1. Could you start by telling the listeners what you... ...... this week?
   a- will do **b- do** **c- have done** **d- are doing**
2. Tomorrow afternoon, I .... with two other astronauts to a secret location.
   a- am travelling **b- will travel** **c- can travel** **d- travel**
3. The launch .... at 7.50 the next evening.
   a- is to be **b- will be** **c- is going to be** **d- is**
4. We have to repair equipment .... the international Space Station
   a- in **b- on** **c- at** **d- for**

   The main problem is the temperature control system. We think there may be .... of some kind
   a- a lack **b- leaky** **c- a leak** **d- a lock**
5. We'll almost certainly need to spend some time .... outside.
   a- working **b- work** **c- to work** **d- to working**
6. We won't know .... sure until we're there .
   a- with **b- by** **c- to** **d- for**
7. We'll probably be there .... about five or six days
   a- in **b- since** **c- for** **d- at**

S.B Exercise

8. July 2002 was the 40th .... of the Egyptian revolution.
   a- university **b- anniversary** **c- memorial** **d- universe**
9. A representative for the World Tourism Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people .... to book their holidays in space.
   a- are queuing **b- are going to queue** **c- will be queuing** **d- queue**
10. The space station will be orbiting the Earth ....320 kilometers
    a- at a height of **b- at speed of** **c- at length of** **d- at width of**
11. The space station will be like a giant ....wheel with spokes like a bike wheel.
    a- cycling **b- recycling** **c- spinning** **d- turning**
12. Some people are worried that space tourists will suffer from the same horrible...................... as astronauts have suffered from.
    a- full effects **b- bad effects** **c- side effects** **d- wide effects**
13. Experts say that there are now ....for most side effects.
    a- medical **b- treating** **c- treats** **d- treatments**
14. It will be impossible to go .... or go for walk.
    a- shopping **b- to shop** **c- shop** **d- shipping**
15. The more people want to do something, ... it will become.
    a- cheap **b- cheapest** **c- cheaper** **d- the cheaper**
16. Rockets will be used to .... the earth.
    a- sail **b- orbit** **c- move** **d- go**
17. .... is the force that makes things fall to the ground when they are dropped.
    a- Graveyard **b- Gravity** **c- Grave** **d- Graphics**
18. A person trained to travel in a spacecraft is called a/an............
    a- traveller **b- scientist** **c- astronaut** **d- geologist**
19. If his real identity ever.................... out, his life will be in great danger
    a- bakes **b- takes** **c- fix** **d- leaks**
20. It's always the poor who suffer most......................... unemployment.
    a- of **b- from** **c- at** **d- in**
21. Do you promise not to tell anybody this.........................?
    a- secret **b- carpet** **c- safe** **d- pocket**

W.B Exercise

22. You can launch a new ship or a ....
    a- a rocket **b- a racket** **c- a pocket** **d- a packet**
23. Doctors ....patients but mechanics do the same to cars for damage.
    a- examine **b- see** **c- exam** **d- examines**
24. We called the plumber to repair the ....of the tap.

a- lack b- leak c- lock d- look

25. The car stopped because there was a ....in the petrol tank.
 a- leak b- lock c- unlock d- lack
26. Our air-conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to ....it tomorrow.
 a- repairs b- make c- do d- repair
27. The doctor ....carefully before he gave me the medicine.
 a- examine b- examines c- examined d- exam
28. Computer passwords should always be ....You should never tell anyone.
 a- secret b- known c- unknown d- hidden
29. The astronauts went on a two-hour ....to replace a broken fuel pump.
 a- spaceflight b- spacecraft c- spacewalk d- space run
30. Some drivers have a sat-nav.............in their car to help them find the best route.
 a- system b- process c- set d- apparatus
31. The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday .Every one watched the ....on TV.
 a- lunch b- launch c- larch d- flying
32. Space ....can take several years.
 a- missions b- craft c- shuttle d- life
33. The moon has less ....than the Earth, so you can jump much higher there.
 a- attraction b- gravity c- grave d- pull
34. Doing ....is a very good way of keeping fit.
 a- swimming b- football c- gymnasium d- gymnastics
35. Two of the ....on the front wheel of my bike were broken in the accident.
 a- spokes b- sparks c- spikes d- spices
36. The ....between Cairo and London is 3500 km.
 a- length b- space c- distance d- width
37. When you are ....in the space. It must be difficult to stand still.
 a- weighty b- weightless c- weight lifting d- spin
38. ....I'm working for important exams. Then, when I finish, I am going on holiday.
 a- current b- currency c- currant d- currently

More Exercises

39. USA .... a new a space shuttle last week.
 a- launched b- lunched c- punched d- attached
40. The investigations were .... to the press.
 a- baked b- cheated c- liked d- leaked
41. This issue is ....being discussed.
 a- costly b- currently c- distantly d- tightly
42. This medicine caused harmful .... effects.
 a- side b- aside c- inside d- outside
43. The moon has one-fifth of the earth ....
 a- grave b- gravity c- gape d- acidity
44. There's a problem ...... my computer, I will call the service center.
 a- of b- at c- for d- with
45. When you are .... in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.
 a- countless b- weightless c- harmless d- endless
46. ....are well trained to do space walks.
 a- Astronauts b- Accountants c- Astrologers d- Engineers
47. A space station will .... the Earth.
 a- turn b- spin c- move d- orbit
48. A lot of people would like to go..................... space holidays.
 a- on b- in c- at d- with
49. The spokes of the space station have .... gravity.
 a- full b- zero c- maximum d- under
50. There are now.................... for most side effects of space travel.
 a- agreements b- amusements c- treatments d- appointments

01000453264 01287277089

51. It's still not possible to accurately .... the occurrence of earthquakes.

a- predict **b- defect** **c- convict** **d- restrict**

52. Everybody is aware of the hazards of smoking........?

a- isn't he **b- doesn't he** **c- is he** **d- aren't they**

53. I can smell a gas ....in the kitchen.

a- fake **b- break** **c- leak** **d- lock**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1- -Activity is the force that makes things fall to the ground.
2- -After the storm, they had to compare the roof.
3 --Am I ask you about your name?
4 --An astronomer is the person who has been trained for travelling in spacecraft.
5 -At our school, there are a lot of students who are interested on English.
6 -At the moment, the main advantage of a space holiday is its cost. It is very expensive.
7 -Aya looks forward to be a doctor?
8 -Because of its height and width, the container had plenty of place for storage.
9 - Concurrently, the cost of a space holiday is very high.
10 - Currency, the cost of a holiday is very high.
11 -Doctors must test patients before giving medicine.
12 -Egypt is the first Arab Country to launder a satellite.
13 -Even if we aren't scientists, many of us are interested in space explanation.
14 -Everyone travelled in space described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth.
15 -Her mansion in life is to help the poor.
16 -Hind arrived Cairo airport.
17 -How much does the suit coast?
18 - I have never be to Aswan.
19 - I'm looking forward to travel to space.
20 -In space, you can have fun with weighty football and gymnastics.
21 -In the future people will go for space holidays.
22 - In the next ten years, people will be queuing to lock their holidays in space.
23 - In the Past, people uses to go into their banks.
24 -It is wonderful to see the Earth spinning under you.
25 -July 1969 was when people first laundered on the moon.
26 -July 2009 was the fortieth memorial of man first walking on the moon.
27 - Local warming is changing the weather in many parts of the world.
28 - Marwa looks forward to visit Rome.
29 -My father has has a bank account since he was 18.
30 -My father helped me doing the homework.
31 -My father learns to drive a car four years ago.
32 -People will be rowing to book space holidays.
33 - Scientists are testing the new drug to find out if it has any outside effects.
34 - Smoking has bad side affects.
35 -Space tourists can make weightless sports in space.
36 -Space tourists will fly to the space station by racket.
37 -Surgeons wear private uniforms.
38 -The content of the report was leak to the press.
39 -The distant between Cairo and Asyut is 375 km.
40 - The feeling of looking down on the Earth from space is described as logical.
41 -The flywheel orbits when the power is turned on.
42 - The space station will be ordering the Earth at a height of 320 km.
43 - The students were inspected on ancient Egyptian history.
44 - The sun is a planet.

01000453264 01287277089

Ahmed Saeed

45 -The will be weightloss sports in the future.
46 -They had a party to celebrate their silver wedding party
47 -They will fly by rocks to space station.
48 -Two sparks in the wheel of my bicycle were broken.
49 - We always meet in Sunday.
50 - We really need to spend more money in education.

6-Translate into Arabic:

1 -For most people, the main disadvantage at the moment is the cost of space holidays. Currently, the cost of a holiday is very high. But like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now.

2-Since its inauguration, the Suez Canal has been one of Egypt's outstanding geographical, historical and cultural landmarks. With its central location, it links the east to the west .It is considered a major artery of world trade.

7-Translate into English:

1

1- يخطيء كثير من الناس عندما يعتقدوا ان استكشاف الفضاء مضيعة للوقت و المال.
2- لا تزال سياحة الفضاء قاصرة علي الاغنياء فقط.

Language Focus

Future time زمن المستقبل

هناك طرق مختلفة للتعبير عن المستقبل:•

1) Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

•يتكون المستقبل البسيط من: المصدر will / shall +

- I expect **I will ('ll) see** you tomorrow.
- When **will she get** here?
- We shall probably go to Alex. In the summer.

لاحظ استخدام will واستخدام مع كل الضمائر مع shall مع I / we فقط:
يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع كلمات مثل:
next year / in the future / soon / in a year / tomorrow / this time next week
this time tomorrow / soon
- I'll travel tomorrow morning.
- They will arrive soon.

لاحظ استخدام المستقبل البسيط غالبا مع:
I expect / I'm sure / I think / probably /I hope / I believe / I feel sure / Perhaps / I know / I wonder / I suppose
- **I expect** he **will win** the first prize.
- **I** don't **think** she **will get** the job.
- **Perhaps** it **will rain** tomorrow.

في الحالة الأولي : If ويستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع
- If it rains, we **will** stay at home.

استخدامات will:

• تعبر will عن حقائق مستقبلية(future facts).
- I'll be 16 next week.

• تستخدم will للتنبؤ عن أحداث مستقبلية predictions) .(
- I'll probably be away for a week.
• تعبر will عن قرار سريع(quick decision).
- That's the phone – I'll answer it.
• تستخدم will فى العرض (offer) و كذلك فى الطلب (request)
- I'**ll** go shopping with you if you like. (Offer)
- **Will** you look at my homework tonight, please? (Request)
• تستخدم will للتهديد (threat) .
- I'**ll** resign if I don't get a pay rise.

Will + inf. + when/as soon as/after/before/till/until + مضارع بسيط أو تام

- **I'll leave** the office **after** I **finish** **(have finished)** my work.
- **I'll finish** my work **before** I **leave** **(have left)** the office.
- I **won't leave** the office **until** I **finish** **(have finished)** my work.

استخدامات shall:

• تستخدم shall مع I / we.
- **I / we shall** go to Assiut next month.
• تستخدم shall لعمل اقتراحات (suggestions) و فى العرض .(offer)
- **Shall** I meet you on Friday? (suggestion)
- **Shall** we have a party? (Suggestion)
- **Shall** I help you with your homework? (Offer)

2) Going to

- I'**m going to watch** the TV news before I go to bed.
- He **isn't going to visit** his uncle until Saturday.
- Watch out! The baby **is going to fall**.

• تستخدم going to للتعبير عن خطط (plans) و نوايا (intentions) و قرارات (decisions).
- We're saving up because we'**re going to** buy a car.
- I'**m going to** make some coffee. Do you want some?
- My sister **is going to apply** for a place at medical school.
- When I get home, I'**m going to watch** the news on TV.
• تستخدم going to للتنبؤ بحدث فى المستقبل و يوجد له دليل الآن.
- I think I'**m going to** fail this exam. I haven't done much work.
- I think it'**s going to** rain. The sky's looking very dark.
- I just read the weather report. It'**s going to be** sunny.

3)The present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

• يعبر المضارع المستمر عن حدث فى المستقبل تم الترتيب له و هو محدد.
- He'**s travelling** to Assiut tomorrow. (He's got his ticket.)
- I'**m going** home in half an hour. (I've arranged it with the boss.)
- **She's flying** to India in the summer. (She's arranged that)
- **I'm not doing** anything tomorrow. (I've arranged that)
- Tomorrow, we **are visiting** friends. (We've arranged that)
- I can't see you tomorrow. **We're visiting** relatives.

4)The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط

• يعبر المضارع البسيط عن حدث مؤكد فى المستقبل بسبب جدول مواعيد الخاص مثلا بوسائل المواصلات و السينما و المسرح و المدرسة و جداول الامتحانات.

01000453264 01287277089

- The course **starts** in October.
- This lesson **doesn't finish** until 2.30.
- My plane **leaves** at 7.30 in the morning.

5)The future continuous زمن المستقبل المستمر

- و يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا فى (will / shall + be + v. + ing) يتكون المستقبل المستمر من وقت محدد فى المستقبل.
  - "Can I come and see you at 4 o'clock tomorrow?"
  - "No, I'**ll be driving** to the airport then. Come at 2.30, before I leave."

S.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

1. Hello Ali! I............to the airport in a minute.
   a- go **b- am going** **c- will go** **d- am going to go**
2. I...... to Paris later this morning.
   a- will fly **b- am flying** **c- fly** **d- will be flying**
3. My plane ....at ten o'clock.
   a- leave **b- leaves** **c- am leaving** **d- will leave**
4. ....anything next Saturday?
   a- Will you do **b- Are you doing** **c- Do you do** **d- Have you done**
5. Hi! My family .... Me out today for passing my exams.
   a- takes **b- are taking** **c- take** **d- will take**
6. I...........apply to study medicine at Assuit University.
   a- am going to **b- will** **c- would** **d- have**
7. I ....in the hospital.
   a- am probably working **b- will probably work**
   c- am probably going to work **d- am probably being**
8. Tomorrow I ....the match with my friend .
   a- will watch **b- am watching** **c- watching** **d- am seeing**
9. We ....a card for my brother at the moment.
   a- make **b- are making** **c- made** **d- have made**
10. We need your help. .... do it for us?
    a- Are you going to **b- will you** **c- Do you** **d- should you**
11. Zamalek ....my team.
    a- plays **b- will play** **c- play** **d- are playing**
12. The match ....at six o'clock.
    a- is starting **b- will start** **c- is going to start** **d- starts**
13. I am sure it ....an exciting match.
    a- is going to be **b- is** **c- is being** **d- will be**
14. I ....my next summer holiday in Australia .I have arranged every thing.
    a- will spend **b- am spending** **c- spend** **d- have spent**
15. It is predicted that people ....on space holidays in the next ten years.
    a- are going **b- are going to go** **c- will go** **d- will be going**
16. Our team is attacking hard. They ....a goal.
    a- is going to score **b- will score** **c- is scoring** **d- scores**

W.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

17. This year, I am going on holiday with my family to Italy .I am sure you ....it.
    a- are enjoying **b- will enjoy** **c- are going to enjoy** **d- should enjoy**
18. Are you leaving this evening? Yes, my train ....at 7.15.
    a- is going to leave **b- leaves** **c- will leave** **d- will be leaving**

Have you made any arrangements for the next week? Yes, I ....a friend from Cairo on Monday.
a- will meet **b- meet** **c- am meeting** **d- have worked**

19. Do you have any plans for the week end? I ....professor Afifi on Saturday morning.
    a- will meet **b- am going to meet** **c- meet** **d- will be met**

01000453264 01287277089

20. I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella? Yes, it ....

a- is probably raining **b- will probably rain**
c- probably rains **d- probably rain**

21. It is arranged .We ....The Red Sea this summer.

a- will go **b- are going to go** **c- go** **d- have gone**

22. I think my brother ....a doctor. He is very clever.

a-will be **b- is going to be** **c- is being** **d- would be**

23. Are you ....tennis after school today?

a- going to play **b- played** **c- play** **d- playing**

24. My English lesson ....at four o'clock this afternoon.

a- finishes **b- finish** **c- will finish** **d- is going to finish**

25. The train ....tonight at 6 PM.

a- leave **b- leaves** **c- left** **d- is leaving**

26. The bus ....arrive at 11 AM, it arrives at 11 PM.

a- don't **b- doesn't** **c- didn't** **d- never**

Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

1 - After he is seeing the film, he will go to bed.
2 - As soon as he meet his friend, he will go to the theatre.
3 - As soon as he will finish the job, he will go to the theatre.
4 - Before she cleans the house, she is doing the shopping.
5 - Can she intend to study medicine in the USA?
6 - Football is an individual sport.
7 - Football players pass the ball to each other until one player can win a goal.
8 .From 5 to 6 tomorrow, I am studying English.
9 . He travels to Paris tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
10 .I expect that our team must win the match.
11 .I going to London next summer.
12 .I have decided that I am traveling abroad next week.
13 .I hope they will won the cup.
14 .I love walk around late at night during the summer.
15 . I think he crashes. He is driving in a crazy way.
16 . I would call the police if you don't stop this noise.
17 .If you don't do your homework, you shall be punished.
18 .I'm going build a house.
19 .It is an interesting book. I'm sure you enjoy reading it.
20 .It will rain. The sky's looking very dark.
21 .My eldest daughter would be 22 next June.
22 .My sister is going to be 11 years old next week.
23 .Perhaps she would visit us tomorrow.
24 .Players should play well to win the other teams.
25 . She intends to visiting her aunt next Friday.
26 .She is gone to finish her work early today.
27 .She leaves when the meeting ends.
28 .She won't go shopping when she has dusted the furniture.
29 .The bookcase isn't well fixed. It's will go falling.
30 .The boy is fell in the river, I am going to save him.
31 .The exams will be next month.
32 .The film shall start at 7 p.m. tomorrow evening.
33 .The next plane will arrive at 3.
34 . The shirt is fashionable; I can buy it soon.
35 .The shirt is fashionable; I would buy it soon.
36 .The water is boiling – I am going to turn the gas off.
37 .They leave for London tomorrow. They've arranged everything.

01000453264 01287277089

38 .We are packing our luggage because we have gone to travel to Italy.
39 .We have prepared everything, we will leave tomorrow.
40. You should cooperate with other players to score a lot of ends.

Language Functions

Agreeing with an opinion الموافقة على رأى ما	Disagreeing with an opinion عدم الموافقة على رأى ما
I completely agree. أوافق تماما	I completely disagree. لا أوافق تماما
I couldn't agree more. أوافق تماما	I don't agree. لا أوافق
Yes, you're quite right. نعم. أنت على حق تماما	I'm not so sure. لست متأكدا جدا
I'd go along with that. أوافق على ذلك	That's just not true. هذا غير حقيقى تماما
That's true. هذا حقيقى	I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك

Respond to each of the following situations:

1- Someone says that modern technology has improved everyone's lives. You don't agree.
2- Someone says that space exploration is a waste of money. You have the same opinion.
3- You have arranged to have lunch with your brother tomorrow. What do you say?
4- You have arranged to spend your summer holiday in Australia. What do you say?
5- A tourist asks you about the next train to Luxor tell him there's one at ten o'clock.
6- A friend asks what you want to do after school. You intend to go to the library. What do you say?

Test on Unit 1

1- Respond to the following situations:
1.Someone says that space exploration is too expensive. You agree
2.Someone says that computers are a bad thing. You do not have the same opinion.
3.One of your friends says he thinks walking in space would be very frightening. You think he's right
4.You hear someone say that all astronauts are very rich. You know this is not true.

2- Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are: (June, 2009)
1- A: Can you show me where I can try this dress on?
B: The fitting rooms are on the left over there
Place.................- Speaker A: ....- Speaker B:.................. - Function: ....
2- A: How long have you been feeling unwell?
B.: Since Sunday
A: Well, you need to take one of these tablets 3 times a day.
Place.................- Speaker A: ....- Speaker B:.................. - Function: ....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d
1.Millions of people watched the rocket (start – launch – set off – beginning) on TV. -
2.The medicine I am taking is wonderful. It has no side (results – damage – effects – problems).
3.I expect (I'm going to see – I'll see – I'm seeing – I see) you at the weekend.
4.The film (is starting – is going to start - starts – has started) at 7.30 this evening.
5.The mechanic (examined – explained – extended – looked) the engine for damage.
6.There was a (brake - leak – lake – fake) in the water pipe and I had to have it fixed.
7.Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to (prepare – impair – despair – repair) it tomorrow.
8.Computer passwords should always be (known – public – secret – distributed). You should never tell anyone.

01000453264 01287277089

9.The astronauts went on a two–hour space (walk - talk – swim – jump) to replace a broken fuel pump.
10.Some drivers have a sat-nav (order – stick – system – string) in their car to help them find the best route.
11.: This year I'm going on holiday with my family to Italy. B: I'm sure you (will enjoy – enjoy – are enjoying – have enjoyed) it.
12.A: Are you leaving this evening? B: Yes, my train (is going to leave – leaves – will leave – has left) at 7.15.
13.A: Have you made any arrangements for next week? B: Yes, (I'll meet – I meet – I'm meeting – I have met) a friend from Cairo on Monday.
14.: Do you have any plans for the weekend. B: I (meet – 'm going to meet – 'll meet – would meet) Professor Ali on Saturday morning.
15.A: I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella? B: Yes, it (will probably rain – is probably raining – probably rains – has probably rained).
16.I (visit – going to visit – am visiting – would visit) some relatives next Monday. It's already arranged.

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:
1- The doctor exchanged me carefully before he gave me the medicine.
2- The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the lunch on TV.
3- Space fissions can take several years.
4- I travel to Greece next Monday. Everything is arranged.
5- Next Wednesday, my Physics exam is starting at 8.00 a.m.
6-I think my brother is a doctor. He's very clever.

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (June, 2009)

Eat healthy food and have a healthy body. Now, we know that there is also healthy food for your brain. Eat healthy food and have a healthy mind. New research clearly shows the link between diet and mental health.

There has been a campaign to improve school meals. A head teacher of a school banned junk food and started serving healthy food. This research shows that the students' behaviour in class has been a lot better. They became calmer and they learn and concentrate more.

A mental health foundation (M.H.F) has started a campaign "Feeding Minds" to publicize its own research. This research shows that our diets have changed a lot and the level of mental illness has increased, unhealthy diet can cause depression and insomnia.

The last part of the research concerns the Mediterranean diet. Scientists knew that this diet (fruit, vegetables, fish and olive oil) helps you live longer. It also prevents a serious mental disease "Alzheimer" that affects the elderly.

So, what does this research suggest to you? To improve your memory, eat salmon. To fight insomnia, eat nuts. If depression is a problem, eat brown rice. If you worry about your later years, cook with olive oil.

A. Answer the following questions:
1- What is the main idea of the passage?
2- Mention the campaigns' targets of the school and the MHF?
3- What does the underlined word "they" refer to/
4- How are nuts helpful for our health?
B. Choose the correct answer:
5- The following diseases are all mental except -------------------.
a) Alzheimer b) Depression
c) Insomnia d) Blood Pressure
6- The Mediterranean diet includes-------------------------
a) junk food b) meat and rice c) fast food d) fish and olive oil

01000453264 01287277089

6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My advice about learning to drive would be to have proper lessons from a qualified instructor and never to let a friend or family member try to teach you. It's a guaranteed way to spoil a good relationship. Every Sunday, when the traffic was quieter, my father would pick me up and take me for a drive along the streets of our hometown and give me a lecture on how to drive, explaining everything he was doing and why. Eventually it was my turn to have a go. My dad was so nervous that he panicked before I'd even started up the engine. He used to shout at the slightest mistake, and when the lesson was finally over he'd come home and have a large glass of whisky to calm down.

Answer the following questions:

1-According to the writer, who is the best person to teach you how to drive?

2-What do you think about the writer's father?

3-Find words in the passage which mean:

a) felt very frightened b) having suitable knowledge, experience or skills

Choose the correct answer:

4-The underlined word he refers to -----------------.

a) the writer b) the instructor c) the writer's father d) the writer's friend

5-The writer's father used to teach him how to drive ------------------.

a) once a week b) every Monday c) twice a month d) every day

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (June, 2009)

"How has the internet affected our lives?"

9- A) Translate into Arabic: (June, 2009)

Many studies have shown that it is better to wear your seat belt when you are driving a car. Seat belts greatly reduce the risk of death or injury in accidents. This fact is widely recognized and many governments have passed laws requiring seat belt use.

B) Translate into English:

1- يسعي العالم جاهدا لاكتشاف علاج لأنفلونزا الخنازير.

2- نحتاج الي التكنولوجيا الحديثة لكي تساعدنا في حل الكثير من المشكلات مثل التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري.

01000453264 01287277089

Unit 2: The Prisoner of Zenda

Listening

Hope: The Prisoner of Zenda

Presenter: In today's Book Program, we're going to hear about the life and work the writer Anthony Hope. In the studio we have Professor David Lyons from the University of South London. Professor Lyons, Anthony Hope is well known for his **adventure** novels, but what sort of a man was he? Was he like his heroes?
Professor Lyons: Not in the least. Anthony Hope was **a well-educated** English **lawyer** who started writing in his free time.
Presenter: Could you tell us something about his early life?
Professor Lyons: Yes, of course. Anthony Hope was born near London in 1863. After finishing school, he went to Oxford University, where he studied **classics**. He was interested in **politics** and was a good speaker in university **debates**. After Oxford, he trained as a lawyer and started working in London in 1887.
Presenter: So how did you start writing?
Professor Lyons: Well, as in those days have plenty of free time - so Hope wrote short stories for magazines. He wrote his first novel, *a Man of Mark*, in 1890, but had to **pay for** the **publication** himself.
Presenter: How about his most famous book, *The Prisoner of Zenda*? Did he pay for that?
Professor Lyons: No. By then, he was already a successful **novelist**. The amazing thing about this book was how quickly he wrote it. He first had the idea in late 1893 and the book was **published** in April 1894. It was immediately successful.
Presenter: What was so special about The Prisoner of Zenda?
Professor lines: Well, it's a very exciting adventure story which **takes place in** a **fictional** European country. I think it was so popular because it's not about everyday lives- people like **escapism**.
Presenter: Did Hope marry?
Professor Lyons: Yes, he did. In 1903, he went on a speaking tour to other countries and met Betty Somerville. The couple were married later that year, then came back to England, where they had two sons and a daughter.
Presenter: And did he continue writing?
Professor Lyons: yes, in all he wrote thirty-two works of fiction, but The Prisoner of Zenda was always his most **popular** story. It **made** him a lot of **money**. A lot of firms have been **based on** the story, and the public still enjoy reading it today.
Presenter: Thank you, Professor Lyons - that was most interesting. If you haven't read The Prisoner of Zenda yet, borrow it from your local library. It's one of those books you just can't put it down.

Reading	The prisoner of Zenda	

The story takes place in nineteenth-century Europe. Rudolf Rassendyll, a **wealthy** Englishman, if the cousin of Rudolf Elphberg, who is about to become the new king of Ruritania, a **fictional** country in central Europe. Rudolf Rassendyll decides to travel to Ruritania to **attend** the coronation of his cousin, who he has not met before.



Soon after he arrives, he is walking through

a forest where he meets the future king. The two men are surprised to discover that they are so **alike**: they are almost identical twins. The cousins talk excitedly about the **coronation**.

However, on the night before the great **occasion**, Rudolf Elphberg is kidnapped by his younger brother Michael and locked in the **castle** in the town of Zenda. Although Michael does not **have the right to** be the next king of the country, he is popular with some of the people of Ruritania. He wants to stop the coronation so that he can become the next king himself.

Rudolf Rassendyll solves the problem by taking his cousin place. Because the two men look so alike, nobody realizes what is happening and the coronation takes place as planned. While Rudolf Elphberg remains in the castle, Rudolf Rassendyll lives the life of the king and spends time with his cousin's friends. At the same time, he realizes that he cannot remain the king of Ruritania forever. He decides to rescue Rudolf Elphberg.

The story ends happily for Elphberg when he finally becomes the new king. Michael dies. Rassendyll says goodbye to his friends and leaves the country. The people of Ruritania never find out what has really happened.

Key Vocabulary

classics	دراسة الادب اليونانى و الرومانى القديم	coronation	تتويج
couple	زوجان	alike	متشابه
debate	مناقشة / مناظرة / يناقش	attend	يحضر
escapism	الهروب من الواقع	castle	قلعة
fictional story	قصة خيالية	the right to	الحق فى
publication	مطبوعة / نشر	occasion	مناسبة
Well-educated	على قدر جيد من التعليم	wealthy	غنى / ثرى

Vocabulary

prisoner	سجين	popular	محبوب / شعبى
literature	الأدب	the public	الجمهور
ancient	قديم	local	محلى
romantic	رومانسى	poet	شاعر
relationship	علاقة	print	يطبع
entertainment	تسلية / ترفيه	available	متاح / متوافر
activities	أنشطة	real	حقيقى
worries	هموم	Greeks	اليونانيون
enjoyable	ممتع	Romans	الرومان
education	التعليم	formal	رسمى
publish	ينشر	reduce	يقلل
sign	علامة / لافتة	global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
writer	كاتب	architecture	فن العمارة
novelist	روائى	home team	الفريق المضيف
self-confident	واثق بنفسه	chase	يطارد
smart	أنيق / ذكى	suspect	مشتبه فى أمره
adventure novels	روايات المغامرات	coin	عملة معدنية
sort = type = kind	نوع	quantity	كمية
hero	بطل	athletics	ألعاب القوى
lawyer	محامى	favourite sport	رياضة مفضلة
law	قانون	require	يتطلب
free time	وقت الفراغ	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
politics	السياسة	attacker	مهاجم / معتدى
immediately	فى الحال	ceremony	احتفال
adventure story	قصة مغامرة	wedding	حفل زفاف

officially	رسميا	rescue	ينقذ
king	ملك	finally	فى النهاية
queen	ملكة	replace	يحل محل
kingdom	مملكة	leader	قائد
legally	قانونيا / شرعيا	ambitious	طموح
valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة	cruel	قاسى
possessions	ممتلكات	steal	يسرق
own	يمتلك	altogether	معا / تماما
summary	ملخص	choice	اختيار
forest	غابة	member	عضو
identical	متماثل / متطابق	morally	أخلاقيا
twins	توأم	follow	يتبع
excitedly	بانفعال	Central Europe	أوروبا الوسطى
kidnap	يخطف (شخصا)	fictional country	دولة خيالية
lock	يغلق / قفل	power	سلطة / طاقة / قوة
realise	يدرك	finance	يمول / المالية
forms	أشكال	needs	احتياجات
suspense	تشويق	occasionally	أحيانا
remain	يبقى / يظل	beliefs	معتقدات
forever	الى الأبد	teaching job	وظيفة تدريس

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

listen to	يستمع الى	look alike	يبدو متشابه
forget about	ينسى عن	say goodbye to	يودع
well-known for	مشهور بـ	free ..... from	يخلص (يحرر) ... من
tell about	يتحدث عن	be put in prison	يوضع فى السجن
interested in	مهتم بـ	fall off his horse	يسقط من على حصانه
pay for	يدفع ثمن	make regular visits	يقوم بزيارات منتظمة
write ... for	يكتب .... لـ	belong to	يخص / ينتمى الى
go on a tour	يذهب فى جولة	stop ..... from	يمنع .... من
come back	يعود	break in	يقتحم (بدون مفعول)
It made him money	دَرّت عليه المال	know nothing of	لا يعرف شيئا عن
prevent from	يمنع من	look in astonishment	ينظر فى دهشة
escape from	يهرب من	at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
walk through	يسير عبر	not in the least	كلا ، على الاطلاق
on the night before	فى الليلة التى تسبق	an expert in	خبير فى
have the right to	لديه الحق فى	work as	يعمل كـ
popular with	محبوب من / شائع لدى	protect from	يحمى من
at the coronation	فى حفل التتويج	ready for	جاهز لـ

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
ancient	قديم	modern	حديث
real	حقيقى	fictional	خيالى
wealthy	ثرى	poor	فقير
important	مهم	unimportant	غير مهم
formal	رسمى	informal	غير رسمى
popular	شعبى / محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبى

01000453264 01287277089

escapism	الهروب من الواقع	realism	الواقعية
local	محلى	global	عالمى

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
	fiction قصة / خيال	fictional قصصى / خيالى
publish ينشر	publication مطبوعة / نشر publisher ناشر	published منشور
escape يهرب	escapism الهروب من الواقع	escaped هارب
educate يعلم	education التعليم	
	classics دراسة الادب اليونانى و الرومانى القديم	classical له علاقة بأدب أو فن الإغريق والرومان

Definitions تعريفات

Classics دراسة الادب اليونانى و الرومانى القديم	the study of the language and history of the ancient Greeks and Romans.
Couple زوجان	two people who are married or have a romantic relationship
Debate مناقشة	an organised discussion on an important subject
Escapism الهروب من الواقع	entertainment or activity that helps you to forget about your work or worries and think of something more enjoyable
Fictional خيالى	not real, invented by a writer
Publication مطبوعة	when a book is printed and available to buy
Well-educated على قدر جيد من التعليم	having had a good education
Alike متشابه	almost exactly the same; similar
Attend يحضر	to go to a meeting, school, church, etc.
Castle قلعة	a very large strong building built in the past to protect the people inside from attack
Coronation تتويج	a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king or queen
Have the right to لديه الحق فى	legally or morally allowed to do something
Occasion مناسبة	an important event or ceremony
Wealthy ثرى / غنى	having a lot of money, land or valuable possessions, especially when you or your family have owned them for a long time.

Confusable Words

couple	زوجان / اثنان من نوع واحد
pair	زوج من (شئ واحد يتكون من جزئين)
double	ضعف (العدد أو الكمية / يضاعف

Ex: Mr and Mrs Hani are a happy **couple**.
The doctor said my leg should be better in **a couple of** days.
What do you think of this **pair** of shoes / gloves / glasses / trousers?
I paid **double** for those trousers before the sale.
Company profits have **doubled** since the introduction of new technology.

01000453264 01287277089

alike	متشابه	like	مثل / يحب
similar	مشابه / متشابه	the same	نفس الشئ

Ex: The children all **look** very alike.
She looks best in bright, vibrant colours, **like** red and pink.
Do you **like** fish?
My father and I have **similar** views on politics.
My twin sister and I have got **the same** nose.

kidnap	يختطف (شخصا)	hijack	يختطف (سفينة أو طائرة)
Snatch	يختطف (شئ)	grab	يختطف (شئ) / يمسك

Ex: The wife of a businessman has been **kidnapped** from her home in Surrey.
Two men **hijacked** a jet travelling to Paris and demanded $125 000.
He **snatched** the photos out of my hand before I had a chance to look at them.
A little boy **grabbed** her handbag as she was walking across the park.
He **grabbed** his child's arm to stop her from running into the road.

hear of / about	يسمع عن (شخص / شئ)	hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من

Ex: Have you ever **heard of** Alfred Nobel?
I haven't **heard from** my cousin for so long.

take place	يحدث	take the place of	يحل محل
take someone's place	يحل محل شخص	take part in	يشارك فى

Ex: A terrible accident **took place** last week.
He took **the place of** his father after his death.
He **took his father's place** in the company.
Students **take part in** the school activities.

based on	قائم على / معتمد على	based in	يكون مقره فى (مكان ما)

Ex: This film is **based on** a true story.
My uncle's company is **based in** Cairo.

borrow	يستلف / يستعير	lend	يسلف / يقرض
loan	يسلف / يقرض	owe	يدين

Ex: He **borrowed** some money **from** the bank.
The bank **lent** the businessman 500000 pounds.
This library **loans** books, CDs and videotapes.
I **owe** Janet ten pounds.

decide to + مصدر	يقرر	decide on + اسم	يختار	Decide that + جملة	يقرر

Ex: In the end, we **decided to go** to the theatre.
I've **decided on blue** for the bathroom.
She **decided that** she would retire to the country.

politics (السياسة (الخاصة بالدولة ونظام الحكم	policy مبدأ / قاعدة يسير عليها الفرد/ العمل

01000453264 01287277089

Ex: I'm not interested in **politics**.
It's my **policy** to do business with people I like.

hero بطل (قصة / رواية / شخص قام بعمل عظيم)	champion بطل (رياضى)

Ex: The **hero** of the film is a little boy.
He is the world swimming **champion**.

die (v) يموت	dead (adj) ميت
death (n) موت	deadly (adj) قاتل / مميت

Ex: Twelve people **died** in the accident.
She's been **dead** for twenty years now.
He never got over the **death** of his daughter.
Deadly weapons are used in wars.

publish ينشر (كتاب أو صحيفة مثلا)	advertise يعلن عن (سلع أو خدمات)

Ex: The company has **published** all his books.
If you want to sell your product, you must **advertise** it.

alive عائش / حى / على قيد الحياة	Life الحياة (بوجه عام)
a life حياة (نوع معين من الحياة)	the life حياة (شخص / شعب)

Ex: He isn't dead. He's **alive**.
Life is full of problems.
He leads **a** happy **life** / **a life** of happiness.
He saved **the life** of my son.
He wrote a book about **the life** of the Pharaohs.

allow + مفعول + to + مصدر يسمح	let + مفعول + مصدر يدع
allow + v. + ing يسمح بـ	

Ex: Father **let me go** on a tour round Luxor.
Father **allowed me to go** on a tour round Luxor.
He doesn't **allow smoking** in his office.

steal (يأتى بعده الشئ المسروق)	rob يسرق من مكان أو شخص

Ex: The thieves **stole** five million dollars from the bank .
They **robbed** a bank last week.
Someone **robbed** me last night.
Someone **robbed me of my watch** last night.

Language Notes

It takes / took + مفعول أو ضمير مفعول + اسم + مدة زمنية + to + مصدر	يستغرق

Ex: It took him two hours to do his homework.
How long **does it take you to do** this job?

be about to + مصدر: = nearly	تقريباً / على وشك

Ex: He **was about to leave** the house when the phone rang.
He **nearly left** the house when the phone rang.

as + pp.	هو هنا اختصار لجملة كانت مبنية للمجهول as استخدام التصريف الثالث بعد

Ex: The coronation takes place **as planned**.
= The coronation takes place **as it has been planned**.

train as + a / an + وظيفة	يتدرب كـ

Ex: He **trained as a doctor** in a big hospital.

صفة +to + مصدر	هناك بعض الصفات التى يليها (مصدر + to)

Ex: It was **easy to answer** all the questions.
He was **shocked to see** the homeless poor people.

اسم / ضمير + where + ظرف مكان	اسم / ضمير + فعل + who + عاقل

Ex: He went to London **where** he studied medicine.
The boy **who** I wanted to talk to was not at home.
The woman **who** was injured in the accident is in hospital.

Would like + to + مصدر	يريد / يود / يحب

Ex: I'd like to be an engineer.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1-Someone tells you that he has won two Olympic gold medals. You are very surprised.
2-You want to know if you can watch the DVD when he or she has watched it.
3-You want to know your friend's opinion of the DVD.
4-Your friend bought a new DVD last week. You want to know if he or she has watched it.
5-Your friend says yes. You are very pleased.
6-Your friend says," Tutankhamen became Pharaoh when he was only nine years old".
7-Your friend tells you that he is going to travel to space.
8-Your mother tells you that the prices of food will go down. You are interested.
9-Your sister tells you that the sun is millions of miles away from the Earth. Express how you feel about this.

2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues:

1-A: why are you late? B: the metro has broken down.
A: but you are always late for the first lesson.B: I am really sorry, sir.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function........................ :

2-A: Excuse me. How can I go to the pyramids?
B: You can take the bus No.41 A: thank you very much, sir.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function........................ :

3-A: May I see your ticket, please? B: Here you are.
A: Seat 23A. That's this row here. B: Thank you .What time does it start?
A: The programme starts at 9.00. The film is at 9.15.

Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function........................ :

4-A: Hello! Can I help you, sir? B: Yes, I would like to have a single room.
A : with or without a bathroom? B: with a bathroom, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

54. We're going to ....the life and work of the writer Anthony Hope.
a- hear from **b- hear** **c- hear about** **d- hear to**
55. Professor Lyons, Anthony Hope is ....for his adventure novels
a- good-known **b- well known** **c- best-known** **d- highly known**
56. Anthony Hope was a well-educated English ....
a- lower **b- lawyer** **c- law** **d- judge**
57. He went to Oxford University, where he studied ....
a- classifications **b- classical** **c- classic** **d- classics**
58. He was interested in ....and was a good speaker in university debates.
a- policy **b- politics** **c- politicians** **d- political**
59. He wrote his first novel, *a Man of Mark*, in 1890, but had to pay for the ....himself.
a- publication **b- publicity** **c- public** **d- publicizing**
60. Anthony Hope was already a successful...................
a- novel **b- novelist** **c- tale bearer** **d- poet**
61. The Prisoner of Zenda ....in April 1894.
a- was publicized **b- was published** **c- published** **d- publicised**
62. It's a very exciting adventure story which takes place in a ....European country.
a- fact **b- factual** **c- fiction** **d- fictional**
63. The couple, Anthony and Betty Somerville .... in 1903.
a- were married **b- was married** **c- get married** **d- have married**

S.B Exercise

64. The story .....in 19th century Europe in a fictional country in Europe.
a- takes place **b- takes part** **c- take turns** **d- take aloof**
65. He decides to travel to ....the coronation of his cousin as a king .
a- attend **b- intend** **c- pretend** **d- tend**
66. The two men are surprised to discover that they are so.................: they are almost identical twins.
a- like **b- unlike** **c- alike** **d- dislike**
67. On the night before the great occasion, Rudolf Elphberg is ....by his younger brother Michael.
a- slaughtered **b- assassinated** **c- hi jacked** **d- kidnapped**
68. He is ....the castle in the town of Zenda.
a- locked in **b- looked in** **c- looked up in** **d- looked at**
69. Although Michael does not ....the right to be the next king of the country, he is popular with some people.
a- do **b- have** **c- get** **d- make**
70. He is a very ....man. He has got a lot of property and money.
a- wealth **b- healthy** **c- worthy** **d- wealthy**
71. He left the place after he had ....his cousin.
a- freed **b- fled** **c- fleet** **d- flee**

W.B Exercise

72. ....is the study of the language and history of the great ancient Greeks and Romans. .
a- classic **b- classical** **c- classics** **d- class**
73. A Formal organized discussion is called a ....
a- debate **b- deviate** **c- donate** **d- predicate**
74. ....is entertainment to help people forget their worries.
a- Escaping **b- Escapist** **c- Escape** **d- Escapism**
75. My brother is very ....He went to Cairo University and then oxford.
a- good-educated **b- well-educated** **c- well-education** **d- better-educated**

01000453264 01287277089

76. We are having a ....at school next week about ways of reducing global warming.

a- depart **b- debut** **c- tribute** **d- debate**

77. For some people reading and watching films are forms of ....

a- entertain **b- escapism** **c- fleeing** **d- eloping**

78. In the past, many English children studied ....at school . Now most schools teach modern languages.

a- classes **b- classical** **c- classics** **d- classic**

79. Oliver Twist is the ....hero of one of Charles Dickens' most famous novels.

a- Fictional **b- factual** **c- fabulous** **d- fiction**

80. The prisoner of Zenda was ready for .....a few months after Anthony Hope thought of the idea.

a- publicizing **b- publicity** **c- publication** **d- qualifying**

81. Novels are usually works of .....but they are often based on real life.

a- fiction **b- fictional** **c- factious** **d- factional**

82. His first novel was ....in 1890.

a- published **b- publicized** **c- publication** **d- public**

83. Films and books can sometimes help people to ..from their worries.

a- escapism **b- escape** **c- escapee** **d- escapist**

84. My brother had a good ..... he went to one of the best universities.

a- educate **b- education** **c- educated** **d- educator**

85. You can see a lot of ....architecture in Greece and Rome.

a- classic **b- classics** **c- classical** **d- classicalism**

86. Although everyone in my family works very hard , we aren't a ....family .

a- wealth **b- filth** **c- wealthy** **d- filthy**

87. In Britain , children .....primary school between the ages of 5 &11.

a- go **b- intend** **c- come** **d- attend**

88. The ....of Queen Elizabeth II took place in 1952.It was a fantastic.....................millions of people went to London to watch.

a- crooner **b- coronation** **c- crony** **d- coronial**

a- occasion **b- occasions** **c- time** **d- era**

89. No body has the ....to steal things from other people.

a- rite **b- rot** **c- right** **d- permit**

90. Some twins are more ....than others.

a- like **b- alike** **c- same** **d- laky**

91. ....were usually made from stones to stop attackers from breaking in.

a- Tunnels **b- Watch towers** **c- Barracks** **d- Castles**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1 . A defeat is a formal organised discussion.
2 .Before she did research on new treatments, she works as a surgeon.
3 .Both my parents are tired. They no longer work.
4 .Can you tell me what the thief was alike?
5 .Escaping is entertainment that helps people to forget about their.
6 .He had to pay to his first novel.
7 .He was a good education man who went to Oxford University.
8 . He was fond of listening to the classical of Mozart and Beethoven.
9 .I hadn't heard from Anthony Hope until last week.
10 .I want to be a doctor since I was ten.
11 .It took him five hours finishing the report.
12 .Many people went to London to watch the corony of Queen Elizabeth.
13 .My brother has a difficult decision to do next week.
14 .Over two thousand people pretended the meeting.
15 .People over 18 have the tight to vote in elections.
16 .Rudolf Elphberg is hijacked by his younger brother Michael.

01000453264 01287277089

17 .She is very popular for a lot of people here.
18 .She went to London a pair of years ago.
19 . The book was publicated so many could know about it.
20 . The ceremony of the coordination of the queen was attended by millions of people.
21 .The children intend school from the ages of 6 to 12 in Egypt.
22 .The combination of the king took place in the royal palace.
23 . The gang hijacked the boy and asked for a lot of money to let him go.
24 .The newly married pair are very happy.
25 .The president pretended the final match.
26 .These two sisters are so like.
27 .They did the right to know about this crucial issue.
28 .This novel is intentional. It's not real.
29 .We all have the tight to vote in elections.
30 .What did you do since the weekend?
31 . When I was eight. I have seen a programme about a famous doctor on TV.
32 .When the company needs people to speak for it at a meeting, it can send a relation.
33 . When would you start to learn English? – Two years ago.

Language Focus

Subject-Verb agreement توافق الفعل و الفعل

Special Cases حالات خاصة

✍ Countable uses of nouns:

الأسماء التي تُعد تستخدم مفرد أو جمع: ✍

- He went to **a school** in Cairo.
- There are hundreds of **schools** in Cairo.
- The Prisoner of Zenda is **a novel**.
- I read three **novels** last week.

• تُستخدم الكلمات a / an / the / one مع الأسماء التي تعد:

- I've just seen **a train**.
- I've just seen **an accident**.
- Where's **the book** I lent you?
- There are 60 seconds in **one minute**.

وتُستخدم الأسماء التي تُعد أيضا مع الكلمات الآتية: ✍

any / some / many / the / How many / two / three, etc. / a lot of

- Were there **any mistakes** in your homework?
- **Some children** are having a picnic in the park.
- There aren't **many cars** on the road this morning.
- **How many students** are there in your class?
- **The apples** were in my shopping bag.
- There are **six CDs** and **four DVDs** on the table.
- He has got **a lot of friends**.

• لاحظ استخدام any فى الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.
• لاحظ استخدام some فى الجمل المثبتة و الأسئلة التى تعبر عن عرض أو طلب.
• لاحظ استخدام many فى الجمل المنفية و الأسئلة.
• لاحظ استخدام a lot of فى الجمل المثبتة.

01000453264 01287277089

✍ Uncountable uses of nouns:

مثل: a / an الأسماء التي لا تُعد لا تجمع والفعل معها مفرد ولا يُستخدم معها ✍

accommodation	مسكن	furniture	أثاث	money	المال
advice	نصيحة	harm	ضرر	news	الأخبار
baggage	أمتعة	information	معلومات	traffic	المرور
behaviour	سلوك	knowledge	معرفة	water	المياه
bread	الخبز	luck	الحظ	weather	الطقس
damage	الدمار	luggage	أمتعة	work	العمل

- Could I have a glass of **water**?
- It isn't a good idea to borrow **money**.

✍ بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:
- She completed her **education** in 1995.
- She had **a good education**.
- We usually have **lunch** at 2.00 p.m.
- We had **a wonderful lunch** at a big restaurant yesterday.

✍ الأسماء التي لا تُعد يمكن استخدامها مع الكلمات و العبارات الآتية:

the / any / some / much / how much / this / that / a lot of
- **The water** in the river is very clean.
- Have we got **any bread**?
- We have **some bread**.
- We don't have **any butter**.
- Would you like **some** more **tea**?
- Can I have **some sugar**, please?
- We don't have **much time** left.
- How **much food** do we need for ten people?
- He has got **a lot of money**.

• لاحظ استخدام any فى الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.
• لاحظ استخدام some فى الجمل المثبتة و الأسئلة التى تعبر عن عرض أو طلب.
• لاحظ استخدام much فى الجمل المنفية و الأسئلة.
• لاحظ استخدام a lot of فى الجمل المثبتة.

✍ Nouns and noun phrases which refer to groups:

مثل: معظم الأسماء التي تُشير إلي مجموعات يمكن أن يُستخدم معها فعل مفرد أو جمع✍

team	فريق	class	فصل	army	جيش	company	شركة
committee	لجنة	couple	زوجان	crew	طاقم (طائرة/سفينة)	crowd	جمهور
family	عائلة	gang	عصابة	group	جماعة	navy	البحرية
population	سكان	staff	هيئة العاملين	university	جامعة		

• عندما نفكر فى المجموعة ككل أى كوحدة واحدة نستخدم فعل مفرد
- The Egyptian **team is** going to play in the finals. هنا الكلام عن الفريق كوحدة واحدة

• عندما نفكر فى أعضاء المجموعة كأفراد نستخدم فعل جمع
- The Egyptian **team are** going to play in the finals. هنا نقصد الفريق كأفراد

• كلمة the public بمعني عامة الناس يأتي معها الفعل جمع أو مفرد :

- The public **has / have** the right to know everything.

01000453264 01287277089

• لاحظ أننا نستخدم فعل جمع مع: police / people / cattle

- The **police are** looking for the bank robbers.

Nouns which look plural:

العبارات الدالة علي الكمية و المبالغ المالية والزمن و الثمن و المسافة و الوزن ودرجات الحرارة تُعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

- **Ten million pounds is** a lot of money.
- **Fifty litres of petrol fills** my car.
- **Five kilometres is** a long way to walk if you are carrying a heavy bag.
- **Two hours is** a long time to wait.
- **Fifty degrees is** a very high temperature.

• ولكن لاحظ أننا نقول:

- **Three one-pound coins** are on the desk. ثلاث عملات معدنية من فئة الجنيه

بعض الأسماء المنتهية بحرف s مثل الألعاب الرياضية و المواد الدراسية يُستخدم معها دائما فعل مفرد:

Athletics ألعاب القوى / politics السياسة / gymnastics ألعاب الجمباز / news الأخبار

mathematics الرياضيات / maths الرياضيات / economics علم الاقتصاد / physics الفيزياء

- **Politics was** my best subject at university.
- **Athletics is** my favourite sport.

ملاحظات هامة:

• هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعني مثل:

orange / paper / coffee / hair / chicken / glass / time / cold / light / iron

1- Would you like **an orange**? (the fruit برتقالة)
I don't like **orange**. I prefer red. (the colour اللون البرتقالي)
2- Would you like **a coffee**? (a cup of coffee فنجان قهوة)
Coffee can you stop you sleeping. مشروب القهوة
3-I've got **a hair** in my mouth. (a single hair شعرة)
There's **hair** on the floor. (a lot of hair شعر)
4-Do you like **chicken**? (chicken meat لحم الفراخ)
Do you like **chickens**? (the animals الفراخ)
5-I'd like some writing **paper**. (ورق الكتابة - لا يعد)
I'm going to buy **a paper**. (= a newspaper)
6-The window's made of unbreakable **glass**. (الزجاج - لا يعد)
Would you like **a glass** كوب of water?
7-Don't hurry. There's plenty of **time**.
He went to London three **times**. مرات
8-Don't go out in the **cold** without a coat. البرد عموما
I've got **a** bad **cold**. نزلة برد
9-This table is made of **iron**. الحديد (لا يعد)
She bought **an iron** yesterday. مكواة
10-The sun gives us **light** الضوء / لا تُعد
We need **two lights** in this room. مصباح كهربي

• اسم يعد مع ملاحظة أن a few / few يأتى بعد

a few: some , a small number of عدد قليل و يكفى	
few: a small number, not many or not enough ; hardly any عدد قليل و لا يكفى	

- There are **a few cakes** left over from the party.
- Very **few people** can afford to pay those prices.

- اسم لا يعد مع ملاحظة أن little / a little يأتى بعد

a little: some, a small amount of something	كمية قليلة و تكفى
little: not much or enough; hardly any	كمية قليلة و لا تكفى

- This sauce needs **a little salt**.
- They have very **little money.**

- بمعني المكان الذي يتعلم فيه الطلاب لا تُعد أما إذا قصدنا المدرسة كمبني فهي تُعد:school كلمة

She drives the kids to **school** every morning.
They're building **a** new **school** in the village.

S.B

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

27. Two hours ....a long time to wait.
a- is **b- are** **c- have been** **d- were**
28. A group of people ....the film.
a- is watching **b- are watching** **c- watching** **d- watched**
29. Two million pounds ....a lot of money.
a- are **c- is being**
b- are being **d- is**
30. Ten minutes ....enough to reach Cairo.
a- are being **b- is being** **c- are** **d- is**
31. Athletics ....your body fit.
a- are keeping **b- keep** **c- keeps** **d- kept**
32. The bag of money ....last night.
a- were stolen **b- is stolen** **c- were stolen** **d- are stolen**
33. This basketball team ....to win the match.
a- are going **b- is going** **c- am going** **d- going**
34. The team ....tonight to their next match..
a- is travelling **b- are travelling** **c- travels** **d- travelled**
35-Are there ------------biscuits left?
a- any **b- some** **c- much** **d- too much**
35. The trousers you bought for me ------- fit me.
a- don't **b- doesn't** **c- isn't** **d- aren't**
36. The pair of trousers you bought for me ------- fit me.
a- doesn't **b- don't** **c- isn't** **d- aren't**
37. Fortunately the news ----------- as bad as we expected.
a- is being **b- aren't** **c- is** **d- isn't**
38. – I don't have --------- furniture.
a- many **b- much** **c- some** **d- a**
39. Can you bring me ....water ,please?
a- any **b- some** **c- many** **d- a lot**

W.B

3-Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

40. ....coffee have you drunk today?
a- how many **b- how much** **c- how** **d- how long**
41. Do you have ....rice left?
a- a **b- any** **c- some** **d- many**
42. ....money do you need for your holiday?
a- how far **b- how many** **c- how much** **d- how long**
43. Fifty degrees ....a very high temperature.
a- are **b- is being** **c- were** **d- is**
44. Athletics ....my father' s favourite sport.
a- is **b- are** **c- were** **d- have been**
45. .The team usually ....very well.

01000453264 01287277089

a- plays **b- has played** **c- have played** **d- plays**

46. How ....seconds are there in an hour?

a-much **b- long** **c- high** **d- many**

47. Ten kilometres ....is a long way to run.

a- are **b- have been** **c- is** **d- be**

48. Would you like ....cup of tea?

a- a **b- any** **c- some** **d- an**

49. One of the players in the blue team ....very tall.

a- are **b- is** **c- be** **d- is being**

4-Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

1- After left university, he worked as a lawyer.
2 - Athletics are important.
3 - Athletics were my father's favourite sport.
4 - Do we have a rice left?
5 - Fifty degrees are a very high temperature
6 - He went to a schools in the village.
7 - How many money do you need for your holiday?
8 - How much clothes have you bought?
9 - How much coffees have you drunk today?
10 - Hurry! There is not many time left.
11 - Money are the root of all evil.
12- .Much people don't have enough to eat.
13 - Our luggage are searched carefully.
14 - She has got a little books.
15 - .She likes oranges but I like green.
16 - The Egyptian teams is very clever.
17 -The people in our group was watching the film.
18 -The police is chasing the suspect.
19 - The team usually plays very well.
20 - They are nice person.
21 - This socks are fine.

Language Functions

Showing surprise or interest
التعبير عن الدهشة أو الاهتمام

Expressing surprise التعبير عن الدهشة	Expressing interest التعبير عن الاهتمام
Really? I didn't know that. أحقا كذلك؟ لا أعرف ذلك	How interesting! ياله من أمر مثير
Good heavens! أمر مدهش	Is that right? أحقا كذلك
How amazing! كم هو مدهش	That's very interesting انه أمر مثير
That's unbelievable! انه أمر لا يصدق	Really? أحقا كذلك

Respond to the following situation:

1- Your friend tells you that he is going to travel to space.
2- Someone tells you that he has won two Olympic gold medals. You are very surprised.
3- Your mother tells you that the prices of food will go down. You are interested.
4- Your sister tells you that the sun is millions of miles away from the Earth. Express how you feel about this.
5- Your mother tells you that the prices of food will go down. You are interested.

01000453264 01287277089

Test on unit 2

1-Respond to the following situations:

a) Your friend has joined a reading group. You want to know the number of people in the group.

b) Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote the Prisoner of Zenda in three months. You are very surprised by this.

c) You are told that Anthony Hope paid for the publication of his first novel himself. Express how you feel about this.

d) Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote more than 30 works of fiction altogether. You are interested

2-Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are: (August, 2009)

a) A: When did you graduate ?
B: In 2005.
A: Do you use the computer well?
B: Yes, sir. I've worked as a programmer in a big company for 3 years.

Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

b) A: Wow! Look at that dinosaur and here are its eggs. They are huge .
B: Don't touch the exhibits, please.
A: Oh, sorry. Can you tell me where the insect exhibition is, please?
B: It's on the right, next to the fossils

Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1-I think (healthy - wealthy – bankrupt – weak) countries should help poor ones.
2-Novels are usually works of (infection – friction – fiction – reflection), but they are often based on real life.
3-Anthony Hope's first novel was (punished – published – crashed – established) in 1890.
4-Films and books can sometimes help people to (escape – yield – resort – enjoy) from their worries.
5-My brother had a good (school – nursery – college – education). He went to one of the best universities.
6-You can still see a lot of (classical – fictional – educational - logical) architecture in Greece and Rome.
7-The last important (chance – occasion – opportunity – incident) I went to was my brother's wedding.
8-Everyone has the right (for – with - to – in) their own beliefs.
9-Five miles (is – are – were – have been) a long way to walk.
10-How (much – many – few – little) oil did you buy? –Two litres.
11-The main evening news (are – have been – were – is) on Channel 1 at 9 o'clock.
12-Forty minutes (have been – was – were – are) a long time to wait for the bus.
13-We have to hurry. There is (many – a lot – few – little) time left.
14-This information (has – have – are – were) helped me a lot.
15-Gymnastics (help – are helping – helps – have helped) to keep your body fit.
16-There are sixty minutes in (some – one – many – much) hour.

01000453264 01287277089

4-Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1-Shylock was the champion of Shakespeare's the Merchant of Venice.
2-The film is based in a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.
3-I'll be back in a double of minutes.
4-How many coffer would you like? – Two cups, please .
5-Thirty pounds are a lot of money for a five-year-old boy.
6-The police thinks that he has forged the money.

5-Read the following passage and answer the questions: (August, 2009)

Nothing we do in this world is done in isolation. It is now recognized that being able to work successfully with other people is one of the major keys to success. In every situation where you are in a group, you will need a skilled leader. All groups need leaders and all successful groups have good leaders. Groups without leaders always break down. Members of a leaderless group often begin to feel dissatisfied and frustrated. There are often arguments and tensions between people as there is nobody to keep the goals clear.

Some people are natural leaders. True leaders are born and you can spot them. They are people who combine toughness, fairness and humour. Although a lot of people agree that there are some natural-born leaders, most people now recognize that leadership can also be taught in training courses which use activities and techniques to develop a range of qualities which are necessary to be a good leader, such as self-confidence, calmness and intelligence. They also need to be able to work under pressure. Lastly, and probably most importantly, good leaders need to be sensitive, sociable and be able to get on with a wide range of people. Good leadership is the ability to influence others and allow all members of the group to contribute.

A.Answer the following questions:
1-What are the qualities of good leaders?
2-Why are people in a leaderless group often dissatisfied and frustrated?
3-Do you think that leadership is a natural born talent or learned skill? Write your own point of view.
4-According to the passage, what does good leadership mean?

B.Choose the correct answer:
5-Successful leaders shouldn't be.-------------
a) fair b) wise c) selfish d) experienced
6-Most people now recognize that they can ----------------- leadership.
a) borrow b) offer c) export d) learn
7-The underlined pronoun "they" refers to.---------------
a) true leaders b) arguments and tensions c) training courses d) leaders' works

6-Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Our mothers had always warned us about the forest and had never allowed us to go there. We were delighted when they finally gave us the permission to play in the forest.
Immediately my cousins and I went to the forest. As soon as we reached the forest, we realised how big it was. As expected, the forest was very dark.
My cousins blindfolded me. Then they went to hide. It was black and I could not see at all. So I walked around with my hands stretched out to feel my way. Suddenly, I bumped into something very hard. At first, I thought it was my cousin. I took off the blindfold, and I was shocked. I had walked into a beehive! I screamed loudly so that everyone could hear me and ran away as fast as I could. The bees followed me and attacked me. I was being stung everywhere!

Fortunately, I found a lake and jumped into it. After some time, the bees flew away and I got out of the lake. My cousins laughed at me because I was all wet.

A-nswer the following questions:

1-Why were the writer and his cousins delighted?

2-Why did the writer stretch out his hands as he walked around?

3-Find words in the passage which mean :

a) cover someone's eyes with cloth   b) at once

Choose the correct answer:

4.The writer removed the blindfold when he.--------------------

a) was stung by the bees   b) heard strange sounds

c) felt delighted   d) bumped into something very hard

.5The underlined word "they" refers to.-------------------------

a) cousins   b) forests   c) mothers   d) bees

D- Writing

8-Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (August, 2009)

"How can we help to protect and improve the environment"

E- Translation

9-A) Translate into Arabic: (August, 2009)

Modern societies need enormous amounts of power for heating, lighting and industry. Most of this power comes from coal and oil. Experts say that this type of fuel will soon be used up. Scientists will have to search for alternative sources of energy.

B) Translate into English:

1- إن العمل الجماعي يقوي الروابط و القيم الإنسانية بين الناس.

2-لابد أن نشجع الاستثمارات الأجنبية في مصر من أجل تحسين الاقتصاد القومى   -2

01000453264

01287277089

Unit 3: Energy

Listening

Interviewer: doctors Zaki, I have heard that we get energy from rocks under the earth. Could you explain how for our listeners?
Dr. Zaki: yes, of course. Would get energy from the heat inside the earth. This is known as **geothermal energy**. "Geo" means earth and "thermal" means heat.
Interviewer: but rocks are cold, aren't they?
Dr. Zaki: not all rocks or cold. **Below the surface** of the earth, the pressure is so great that rocks are in a very hot, liquid form. We say that these rocks or molten.
Interviewer: I see.
Dr. Zaki: the **molten** rock heats underground lakes of water. Sometimes, **steam** is produced like this. When the hot water **comes up** through a hole in the earth's surface, that's when we get hot **springs**.
Interviewer: Is this like the hot water that comes up in the Siwa Oasis?
Dr. Zaki: that's right.
Interviewer: that's very interesting. But I don't understand how we can use energy from these molten rocks.
Dr. Zaki: well, using today's technology, we **drill** deep below the earth's surface into the **underground** lakes of hot water. This water is then **pumped to** the surface and is **heated** again to make steam. This steam is then **piped** to a power station where it is **connected to** machines which **produce electricity**.
Interviewer: this incredible. So we do this a ready?
Dr. Zaki: yes. There are **geothermal power stations** that produce as much energy as two large coal power stations.
Interviewer: well, doctor thank you for talking to us about this very interesting subject.
Dr. Zaki: it's been a pleasure

energy

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Today, most of the energy we use still comes from **fossil fuels** like **coal oil and gas**, which have been **formed** underground over millions of years. We call these **non-renewable forms** of energy because they can only be used once. Because of this, we need to **reduce** our use of **non-renewable fuel** and use more **renewable forms of energy** like that from **the sun,, wind or geothermal energy.** For centuries, the wind has been used to sail ships and to pump water. Now it is used to produce electricity. Groups of wind turbines along the Red Sea in Egypt **generate** large **amounts** of electricity. Water is also a **renewable form** of energy. Huge **quantities** of water go through the High Dam at Aswan from Lake Nasser. This hydroelectric power **supplies** Egypt **with** a lot of its electricity. **As well as being** inexpensive to produce, this clean energy does not **pollute** the environment. Other countries **depend on** nuclear power - power produced when **atoms split**. However, nuclear power produces dangerous **waste** which must be **stored** for thousands of years before it is safe. Accidents at nuclear power stations are extremely dangerous to people's health and to the environment.

Energy from the sun is probably the **best form** of **renewable energy**. Scientists believe that the sun's energy will **last for** another five billion years. This energy can now be **captured**. It is important for us to **save** energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

Key Vocabulary

liquid	سائل	coal	الفحم
molten	منصهر	atom	الذرة

01000453264
01287277089

nuclear	نووى	atomic	ذرى
pipe	أنبوبة / ينقل بالأنابيب	fossil fuels	وقود الحفريات
power station	محطة طاقة	generate	يولد
pressure	ضغط	generation	توليد / جيل
geothermal	حرارى أرضى	hydroelectric power	طاقة كهرومائية
renewable	متجدد	waste	نفايات / فضلات
non-renewable	غير متجدد	wind turbines	محرك يعمل بقوة الرياح

Key Vocabulary

oil products	منتجات البترول	form	يشكل / يكون / شكل
oil rig	آلة البترول	forms of energy	أشكال الطاقة
furnace	فرن / أتون	Lake Nasser	بحيرة ناصر
geo = earth	مقطع بمعنى الأرض	steam	بخار
thermal = heat	حرارة	hot springs	ينابيع مياه ساخنة
nuclear power	طاقة نووية	pump	يضخ / مضخة
nuclear power station	محطة طاقة نووية	incredible	لا يصدق
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	traditional	تقليدى / قديم
plant	نبات / مصنع	create	يخلق / يسبب
sources	مصادر	pollution	التلوث
resources	موارد	pollute	يلوث
sources of energy	مصادر الطاقة	environment	البيئة
clean energy	الطاقة	push	يدفع
substance	مادة	industry	الصناعة
flow	ينساب / يتدفق	impressed	متأثر
solid	صلب	sugar cane	قصب السكر
rocks	صخور	vehicles	مركبات
extremely	للغاية / جدا	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
split	ينشطر	corn	الحبوب
container	وعاء / اناء	vegetables	الخضراوات
press	يضغط على / يكبس	beans	الفول
surface	سطح	diesel	زيت الديزل
damage	يدمر	camp	يعسكر / معسكر

limp	يعرج / عرج	recharge	يعيد شحن
bio-fuel	وقود حيوى	battery	بطارية
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعى	share	يشارك
amount = quantity	كمية	public transport	المواصلات العامة
rubbish	القمامة	increase	يزيد / يزداد
tower	برج	materials	مواد
blade	ريشة المروحة / نصل	develop	يطور
transport	ينقل	bury/buried/ buried	يدفن
reduce	يقلل	conclusion	استنتاج / خاتمة
produce	ينتج	drill	يحفر
production	انتاج	cooperation	التعاون
store	يخزن	cooperate	يتعاون
safe	امن	air conditioning	تكيف الهواء
save	يوفر	expectations	توقعات / أمال
capture	يستولى على/ يأسر/يحصل على	harness	يُسخر/يستخدم/يستغل
workplace	مكان العمل	nuclear waste	نفايات نووية
energy-saving	موفر للطاقة	harmful	ضار

01000453264 01287277089

electric bulb	مصباح كهربى	cycle	يركب دراجة
thermostat	ترموستات	recycle = reuse	يعيد استخدام
roar	يزأر / زئير	reycling	اعادة الاستخدام

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

be joined to	متصل بـ	turn down	يخفض (الصوت مثلا)
be extracted from	يستخرج من	at the same speed	بنفس السرعة
come up	يصعد لأعلى	do a survey	يقوم باستطلاع رأى
pump up to	يضخ إلى	make use of	يستفيد من / يستغل
be connected to	متصل بـ	in my opinion	فى رأيى
do damage	يسبب دمار لـ	run out of	يستنفذ / يستهلك
turn into	يتحول إلى	types of	أنواع كذا
come from	يأتى من	afford to + مصدر	لديه ما يكفى من المال لـ
supply ... with	يزود .... بـ	import ... from	يستورد ... من
depend on	يعتمد على	dangerous to	خطير على
last for	يستمر لمدة	go through	يمر من
use up	يستهلك	along the red sea	بمحاذاة البحر الأحمر
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	sail ships	يُوجه أو يُسير السفن
get rid of	يتخلص من	be produced from	ينتج من
switch off	يطفئ (جهاز / النور)	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
deal with	يتناول / يتعامل مع	give a reason	يقدم سبب

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد
reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد
expensive	غالى	inexpensive	رخيص
connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل
switch off	يوقف	switch on	يُشغل
import	يستورد	export	يصدر

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	فعل	Noun	اسم	Adjective	صفة
renew	يجدد	renewal	تجديد	renewable	متجدد
impress	يؤثر فى	impression	انطباع	impressed	متأثر
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
produce	ينتج	production	انتاج	productive	انتاجى
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تمهيدى
reduce	يقلل	reduction	تقليل / خفض	reduced	مخفض

Definitions تعريفات

Liquid	سائل	A substance such as water which flows, and is not solid or a gas
Molten	منصهر	Molten metal or rock is liquid because it is extremely hot.
Nuclear	نووى	using the energy that is produced when an atom is split or joined to another atom
Pipe	ينقل بالأنابيب	to send a liquid or gas through a pipe to another place

01000453264

01287277089

Power station محطة طاقة	a building where electricity is made
Pressure ضغط	The force that a liquid or gas has when it is inside a container or place. The force produced when pressing against something.
Coal الفحم	a black fossil fuel from underground.
Atom ذرة	the smallest part that a substance can be divided into
Fossil fuel وقود الحفريات	fuel made from animals or plants that lived millions of years ago
Generate يولد	Make electricity
Hydroelectric كهرومائى	using water power to produce electricity
Renewable متجدد	Can be produced as quickly as it is used
Waste نفايات	Materials that are left after you have used something, which you want to get rid of because you no longer need them.
Wind turbine محرك يعمل بقوة الرياح	A building with parts that turn with the wind, which is used to make power

Confusable Words

hear يسمع (بدون قصد)	listen to يستمع الى / ينصت الى (بقصد)

Ex: She **heard** a noise outside.
What kind of music do you li**sten to**?

split / split / split يشطر / ينشطر / ينفصل / ينقسم	spill / spilt / spilt يسكب / ينسكب
spell / spelt /spelt يتهجى	

Ex: When atoms **split**, enormous amounts of energy are released.
The milk **spilt** all over the floor.
Did I **spell** your name right?

lie / lied / lied يكذب	lie / lay /lain يرقد / ينام / يقع (للمكان)
lay / laid / laid يضع / تبيض (الدجاجةُ) / يُعِدّ / يُرتّب	

Ex: Don't **lie** to me. I know everything.
He **lay** in bed listening to the birds singing.
The town **lies** to the east of the river.
He **laid** the book on the table.
The hens have **laid** a lot of eggs.
She **laid** the table for four people.

made of	مـصنوع مـن (مـادة أو مـواد لا يتغيـر شــكلها بعـد التـصنيع)
made from	مصنوع من (مادة أو مواد يتغير شكلها بعد التصنيع)

Ex: She bought a bag **made of** leather.
Bread is **made from** flour.

melt يصهر / ينصهر (بالحرارة)	molten منصهر (فى درجة حرارة عالية مثل الصخور و المعادن)
smelt يستخرج المعدن من الخام	

Ex: The snow usually **melts** by mid March.
Molten rocks rushed out of the well.
Iron ore خام is **smelted** in Helwan factory.

run out ينفذ (لا يتبعه مفعول به)	run out of يستهلك (يتبعه مفعول به)
run on يعمل بـــ / يدور بـــ	run after يطارد

01000453264
01287277089

Ex: We need to find forms of energy that will never **run out**.
We've **run out of** milk – can you go to the shop and get some?
Many cars nowadays **run on** petrol with no lead رصاص in it.
The police **ran after** the thieves who robbed the bank.

(4)

most + noun اسم: nearly all معظم	the most + صفة طويلة: الأكثر

Ex: **Most** people think that money brings happiness.
This is **the most expensive** car I have ever seen.

another + اسم مفرد يعد / one	آخر (اضافى / مختلف)
another + few / عدد + اسم جمع	آخر
other+ اسم جمع يعد / one	آخر
others	الآخر / الآخرون (تشير الى الأشخاص و الأشياء)

Ex: I'm going to have **another piece** of cake.
Do you want to exchange this shirt for **another one**?
I'd like to extend my stay for **another three weeks**.
I'd like to stay in Cairo for **another few days**.
I don't want this shirt. Give me **the other one**.
Tom and three **other boys** went fishing this afternoon.

Some people are rich while **others** are poor.
Some writers are greater than **others**.

instead of + v. + ing بدلا من	instead بدلا من ذلك (تأتى أخر الجملة)

Ex: Instead of eating at home, we went to a restaurant.
There's no coffee - would you like a cup of tea **instead**?

Language Notes

need + مفعول + to + مصدر	يحتاج ...... لكى

Ex: Machines **need energy to work**.

As well as + v. + ing	بالإضافة الى

Ex: **As well as cooking** for 20 people, she did all the washing up.

Be used to + مصدر يستخدم لـ	Be used for + v. + ing يستخدم لـ

Ex: Wood **is used to make** furniture.

Wood **is used for making** furniture.

stop + v. + ing	يتوقف عن

Ex: We should **stop using** up non-renewable sources of energy.

take + مدة زمنية + to + مصدر	يستغرق

Ex: Fossil fuels have **taken millions of years to form**.

Prefixes البادئات

✍تضاف بادئة prefix فى بعض الكلمات لتعطى معنى عكسى مثل:
• **non** = not غير / عدم

fiction	خيال	non-fiction	حقيقى / واقعى
nuclear	نووى	non-nuclear	غير نووى
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد

- **in** = opposite / not عكس/غير

expensive	غالى	inexpensive	رخيص
convenient	مناسب	inconvenient	غير مناسب
efficient	كفء	inefficient	غير كفء

- **un** = not غير

happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
paid	مدفوع	unpaid	غير مدفوع

- **dis** = opposite/not عكس/غير

connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفى

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1-You are doing a survey about energy use in your town .You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.
2- You want to know about a friend's energy saving habits
3- You hear someone use a word you don't understand .The word is **hydroelectric**. What do you ask?
4-Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day. How do you reply?
5-You are doing a survey about energy use in your town .You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.
6-You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is hydroelectric. What do you ask?

<u>2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:</u>

1-A: What sort of petrol do you prefer, sir? B: Super, lead-free, please.
A : Do you need servicing, sir? B:Thank you, no need.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function.................... :

2-A: May I have five loaves of bread, please? B: Most willingly. A: thank you very much.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function.................... :

3-A: What is the matter with you? B: I have insomnia.
A: Will you have exams soon? B: Yes, I will.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function.................... :

4-A: Are you good at English& using computers?
B: yes, I' m. I have worked in Micro-tech Company for three years.
A: ok. We will call you in two days.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function.................... :

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

92. In the word "geothermal energy", "Geo" means earth and "thermal" means ....
a- hot **b- heat** **c- cool** **d- cold**
93. Below the surface of the earth, the ....is so great that rocks are molten.
a- heat **b- pressed** **c- press** **d- pressure**
94. The .... rock heats underground lakes of water.

a- smelted **b- melted** **c- molten** **d- heated**

95. When the hot water comes up through a hole in the earth's surface, we get ....

a- wells **b- springs** **c- hot springs** **d- water falls**

96. We can use .... from these molten rocks.

a- heat **b- energy** **c- force** **d- pressure**

97. We drill deep .... the earth's surface into the underground lakes of hot water.

a- under **b- underneath** **c- above** **d- below**

98. This steam is piped to a power station where it is connected .... machines which produce electricity.

a- to **b- by** **c- with** **d- from**

99. There are .... power stations that produce as much energy as two large coal power stations.

a- geology **b- geologic thermal** **c- geothermal** **d- geo**

S.B Exercise

100. People, animals and plants need ....to live and machines need it to work.

a- energy **b- power** **c- force** **d- life**

101. Most of the energy we use still comes from...............

a- fossil fuels **b- sun** **c- renewables** **d- the earth**

102. coal oil and gas have been formed underground ...... millions of years.

a- in **b- through** **c- over** **d- for**

103. Fossil fuels are ....forms of energy because they can only be used once.

a- renewable **b- non-renewable** **c- new able** **d- renewed**

104. We need to ......our use of non-renewable fuel and use more renewable forms of energy

a- seduce **b- introduce** **c- produce** **d- reduce**

105. The wind turbines along the Red Sea in Egypt ....large amounts of electricity.

a- do **b- have** **c- generate** **d- Bear**

106. This hydroelectric power .... Egypt with a lot of its electricity.

a- gives **b- supplies** **c- gifts** **d- presents**

107. Other countries depend on nuclear power - power produced when atoms ....

a- spill **b- spilt** **c- spell** **d- split**

108. Nuclear power produces dangerous .... which must be stored for thousands of years before it is safe.

a- waist **b- waste** **c- Wister** **d- twister**

109. Scientists believe that the sun's energy will ....another five billion years.

a- last for **b- go for** **c- lest for** **d- least for**

110. It is important for us to save energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

a- safe **b- safety** **c- save** **d- saving**

W.B Exercise

111. Geothermal energy is better than that............by traditional power stations.

a- Producing **b- produced** **c- produce** **d- product**

112. We are going to ....a survey into people's use of energy.

a- have **b- do** **c- make** **d- produce**

113. How ....do you travel by car? Twice a week.

a- long **b- far** **c- many** **d- often**

114. Water is the ....form of ice.

a- liquid **b- gas** **c- solid** **d- unseen**

115. You send a liquid or gas through a ....to move it to another place.

a- canal **b- dam** **c- pipe** **d- hole**

116. Electricity is produced in a/an ....station.

a- energy **b- power** **c- sun** **d- gas**

117. ....is the force produced when two things push against each other.

a- force **b- energy** **c- power** **d- pressure**

118. ....is the black fossil fuel from underground.

a- coal **b- cool** **c- gas** **d- oil**

119. When atoms are split . ...energy is produced.

01000453264 01287277089

a- solar **b- nuclear** **c- geothermal** **d- fossil**

120. If you make rock or metal very hot , it becomes...........

a- dissolved **b- molten** **c- smelt** **d- melt**

121. ....is made from animals or plants that lived millions of years ago

a- nuclear fuel **b- fossil fuel** **c- solar energy** **d- wind**

122. To ....is to make electricity.

a- generate **b- refrigerate** **c- energize** **d- produce**

123. ....means using water power to produce electricity.

a- nuclear **b- Hydroelectric** **c- solar** **d- fossil**

124. ....means can be replaced at the same speed it is used.

a- nuclear **b- renewable** **c- nonrenewable** **d- fossil**

125. ....means materials left after you have used something , which you do not need.

a- waste **b- fossil** **c- paste** **d- rest**

126. ....is a building with parts that turn with the wind , which is used to make power

a- gas station **b- power station** **c- wind turbine** **d- reactor**

127. Water passing through a dam produces ....power.

a- nuclear **b- geothermal** **c- heat** **d- hydroelectric**

128. Burying ....in the ground can damage the environment.

a- oil **b- waste** **c- waist** **d- west**

129. Modern ...are tall towers that are built where thee is a lot of wind..

a- factories **b- turbines** **c- plants** **d- stations**

130. Many countries are now using more ....forms of energy from the sun and wind.

a- knowable **b- renewable** **c- nonrenewable** **d- renewed**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1 - Coal is a black fusil fuel from underground.
2 - Crops of wind turbines along the red sea in Egypt generate electricity.
3 - Electricity pollutes the atmosphere.
4 - Energy from the sun can be hunted and stored.
5 - Energy from the sun is probably the best form of non-renewable energy.
6- Energy from the sun will list for another billion years.
7 - For centuries, the coal has been used to sail ships and pump water.
8 - Geothermal energy doesn't create population.
9 - Geothermal power stations produce as more energy as two large coal power stations.
10 - Hydroponic means using water power to produce electricity
11 - I wove to him from the window but he didn't see me.
12 - It is important for us to increase in using non-renewable energy.
13 - Many countries are now using non-renewable forms of energy from the sun and wind.
14 - Most of the Earth's energy comes up the sun.
15 - Non-renewable means can't be used more twice.
16 -- Nothing can't live without energy.
17 - Nuclear energy is clean and non-renewable.
18 - Nuclear power is produced when atoms spilt.
19 - Siwa oases is very important for us.
20 -The melten rock heats underground lakes of water.
21 - The remains of dead Plants and animals make renewable energy.
22 - The sun's energy will lest for another five billion years.
23 - There are geothermal power stations producing as many energy as two large coal power stations.
24 --There is no pollination from hydroelectric power.
25 -This is the age of science faction.
26 -This water is then pumping to the surface and is heated again to make steam
27 - Water is the solid form of ice

01000453264 01287277089

28 -We always look for new serials of energy.
29 - We get hydroelectric energy from the heat inside the earth
30- You should take a lot of exercises to keep fat.

6-Translate into Arabic:

1-Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Today, most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal oil and gas, which have been formed underground over millions of years.

2- There are many different forms of natural energy that give us light and power in our homes and work. One of these forms is hydroelectric power, which is a renewable source of energy. It's cheap to produce and doesn't pollute the atmosphere.

7-Translate into English:

1-ستدوم بعض مصادر الطاقة مدي الحياة و البعض الاخر سوف ينفذ قريبا.
2- تتجه مصر لتوليد الكهرباء باستخدام الطاقة النووية حتي تخفف اعتمادها علي الوقود الحفري الذي اوشك علي النفاذ.

Language Focus

Present simple Tense: Active

زمن المضارع البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم

Form: التكوين

- يتكون المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل بدون to مثل: play / go / eat
- يضاف للفعل حرف s مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he / she /it)

want - wants   hate - hates
sell - sells   say – says

- يضاف es للفعل المنتهى بـ o / ss / sh / ch / x مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب

go - goes   miss - misses   wish - wishes
watch - watches   mix - mixes

- يضاف ies للفعل المنتهى بحرف y مسبوق بحرف ساكن مع حذف حرف الـ y

carry - carries   fly-flies

- يضاف حرف s للفعل المنتهى بحرف y مسبوق بحرف متحرك

buy - buys   stay-stays

- We **use** petrol in our cars.
- The sun **rises** in the east.

Usage: الاستخدام

✍ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق تكون دائما
- Doctors **help** ill people.

✍ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادة habit أو حدث متكرر repeated action
- I **go** to work at 7 o'clock.
- I **do** my homework every night.

✍ يعبر المضارع البسيط عن حالة أو موقف حقيقى دائم true situation
- I **prefer** coffee to tea.

✍ يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع الظروف الزمنية الآتية وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة أو أولها

01000453264   01287277089

every day/ week / year - twice a week / a month - on Sundays / Fridays

- We **watch** TV **every night**.
- **Every night** we **watch** TV.
- I go to the library **once a week.**

✍يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار و تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة أو بعد verb to be (am / is / are)

always دائماً - usually عادةً - often غالباً - sometimes أحياناً - not often rarely / seldom نادراً - never أبداً – ever – frequently - occasionally

- I **always try** to save energy.
- I **rarely** watch television.
- I'**m always** in a hurry in the morning.

Present simple Tense: Passive

زمن المضارع البسيط : المبنى للمجهول

✍تتكون زمن المضارع البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول من:

مفعول + am / is / are + pp + by + فاعل

- Trees **are** sometimes **blown** down in the night.
- His house **is heated** by the sun.

✍ الآفعال اللازمة (و هى الأفعال التى لا يليها مفعول) لا تستخدم فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول و لا يليها (by + فاعل) مثل:

camp	يعسكر	lie	يكذب / ينام	limp	يعرج	roar	يزأر
happen	يحدث	come	يأتي	fall	يقع	work	يعمل
rain	تمطر	sleep	ينام	stay	يمكث	stand	يقف

- Heat and light **come** from the sun.
- A strange thing **happened** yesterday.

✍نستخدم المبنى للمجهول:

1- للتأكيد على كلمة أو فكرة معينة ، غالبا الفاعل الرئيسى للجملة

- **Water is brought** to people's houses in large plastic bottles.

(الشئ المهم هنا هو الماء ، و ليس الشخص الذى يحضر الماء)

2- عندما لا يكون الشخص الذى قام بالفعل غير مهم أو غير معلوم

- Our post **is delivered** every morning at about nine o'clock.

(نعرف أن ساعى البريد هو الذى يقوم بتوصيل البريد)

- The food **is prepared** in that restaurant.

(لا نحتاج معرفة من يعد الطعام)

Present Continuous Tense: Active

زمن المضارع المستمر: المبنى للمعلوم

✍ **Form: التكوين**

✍ يتكون المضارع المستمر من am / is / are + v. + ing

- It **is raining** now.
- She **is cooking** at the moment.
- They **are studying** at present.

✍ يحذف عند إضافة ing الـ e إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف

leave → leaving   write → writing

move → moving

01000453264   01287277089

✍ إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بـ ie نحول الـ ie إلى y عند إضافة الـ ing

die → dying　　lie → lying

✍ إذا كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد و ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ ing.

stop → stopping　　run → running

cut → cutting

✍ إذا كان الفعل يتكون من مقطعين أو اكثر و ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ ing.

begin → beginning　　prefer → preferring

✍ **Usage: الاستخدام**

✍ يعبر المضارع المستمر عن فعل يحدث الآن أو لحظة الكلام.

- They **are watching** TV.
- I'**m eating** ice cream now.
- Please don't make so much noise. I'**m studying**.

✍ يعبر المضارع المستمر عن شئ تم ترتيبه من قبل.

- I'**m leaving** early today. I've arranged it with the headmaster.

✍ يعبر المضارع المستمر عن حدث يحدث و لكن ليس بالضرورة فى لحظة الكلام.

- I'm reading an interesting book at the moment.

✍ يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية:

now الآن - at the moment فى هذه اللحظة - look انتبه

listen أنصت - at present فى الوقت الحاضر

- **Look**! A car **is coming**.
- They **are playing** tennis **now**.

Present Continuous Tense: Passive

زمن المضارع المستمر: المبنى للمجهول

✍ عند تحويل جملة فى زمن المضارع المستمر من مبنى للمعلوم active إلى صيغة المبنى للمجهول passive نستخدم:

مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. + by + فاعل

- The room **is being cleaned**.
- The mistakes **are being** corrected.

S.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

50. Sometimes steam ....as the molten rock heats underground lakes of water.
    a- produced　　b- is producing　　c- is produced　　d- produces
51. Water ....to the surface and heated to make steam.
    a- is pumped　　b- are pumped　　c- pumped　　d- pumps
52. The steam .... to a power station
    a- piped　　c- is piped
    b- are piped　　d- pipes
53. Wood .... to heat people's homes and for cooking.
    a- are burning　　b- is burning　　c- are burnt　　d- is burnt
54. Sugar cane ..... and used to make fuel for cars and other vehicles.
    a- grow　　b- is growing　　c- is grown　　d- grows
55. Vegetable oil ......from palm trees, corn and some types of beans.
    a- were produced　　b- is producing　　c- is produced　　d- produced

01000453264　　01287277089

56. This oil is put straight into vehicles or ....into diesel.
a- turned **b- turning** **c- turns** **d- turn**

57. Hot water ....up through the Earth's surface.
a- come **b- comes** **c- is come** **d- is coming**

58. The sugar .... Can you bring some , please?
a- is run out **b- run out** **c- run of** **d- is run out of**

59. The last wolves in this area ....100 years ago.
a- are died out **b- died out** **c- were died out** **d- died out of**

W.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

60. In many countries , the wind ....to generate electricity.
a- is used **b- are used** **c- used** **d- uses**

61. scientists ....to find more forms of renewable energy.
a- are wanting **b- want** **c- wants** **d- are want**

62. Huge amounts of energy ....in nuclear power stations.
a- is produced **b- are produced** **c- produced** **d- are producing**

63. Holes ....into the Earth to find hot water .
a- are drilling **b- is drilled** **c- are drilled** **d- is drilling**

64. In some cities , rubbish ....to produce electricity.
a- is burnt **b- are burnt** **c- is burning** **d- are burning**

65. To build a wind turbine a tall tower ....in an open place.
a- is duilding **b- built** **c- are built** **d- is built**

More Exercises

66. Give me a ring as soon as the doctor ----------

a- will arrive	**b- arrived**	**c- arrives**	**d- had arrived**

67. **Teacher**: Where is Ali?
Ayman: He ---------- in the library reading a book.

a-sits	**b-will sit**	**c- is sitting**	**d- sit**

68. There are nine planets orbiting the sun. The Earth --- one of them.

a -was	**b- is**	**c- were**	**d-will be**

69. ------- you like riding, Emad?

a- Are	**b- Do**	**c- would**	**d-Will**

21- Does your sister, Amira ------------- a camera?

a- have	**b- had**	**c- has**	**d- have got**

22. We ------ to the beach in summer and enjoy swimming in the sea.

a- goes	**b- have gone**	**c- go**	**d- went**

23. Ali ---------- his home work day by day and so do I.

a- did	**b- has done**	**c- do**	**d- does**

24. The teacher is pleased with Ali. He --------- makes noise in class.

a- doesn't	**b- never**	**c- didn't**	**d- won't**

25. Adel -------- write to me and rarely phones.

a- isn't	**b- never**	**c- hasn't**	**d- doesn't**

26. Enormous amounts of energy ------- when atoms split.

a- are releasing	**b- release**	**c- will release**	**d- are released**

27. Heba always ------ her computer when she has finished using it.

a- switching off	**b- switched off**	**c- switches off**	**d- is switching**

28-A lot of glass bottles -------- to the recycling plant every week.

a- take	**b-are taken**	**c- takes**	**d- are taking**

Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

1 -Are you wanting to speak to him now?
2 -.He can't speak to you just now. He has a shower.
3 . He is except to win the race.

4 . Holes is drilled into the Earth to find hot water.
5 . How often is she going to the club?
6 . I am owing him 50 pounds. I'll pay it back next week.
7 . I'm thinking he is English.
8 . Is this watch belonging to Ahmed?
9 . My office cleans every day.
10 . Non-renewable forms of energy can use many times
11 . Oil company is searched for oil everywhere
12 . Oil finds far beneath the earth.
13 . The molten rock heat underground lakes of water.
14 . Things aren't always what they are appeared to be.
15 . This place rarely visits by anyone.
16 This water is then pumping to the surface of the earth.
17 . Water is boiling at 100 °C.
18 .What is your father doing? –He's an engineer.
19 . When she is meeting him, she will tell him the truth.
20 .Where is he coming from? – England.

Translate into Arabic:

Energy is necessary for development. It is essential for all productive activities required to achieve higher standards of living. Man's great progress in industry and agriculture is due to energy .

Translate into English:

1- علينا ان نشجع استخدام المواد المعاد تصنيعها مثل الورق و المعادن.
2- يساعد تدوير النفايات علي المحافظة علي البيئة نظيفة؟

Language Functions

Asking for information طلب معلومات	Giving information تقديم معلومات
- Excuse me, could I ask you some questions about..?	- Yes, of course.
- Can / Could you tell me ....?	Yes, that's fine..
- Do you know anything about.......?	Yes, certainly.
- How do you usually go to school?	I usually go to school by car.
- What does "..." mean?	- It means.. - You can look it up in the dictionary.
- Do you think the price of oil will increase in the future? Why / Why not?	- Yes, because it will soon be harder to find.
- How do you think air conditioning damages the environment?	- It makes the outdoors hotter. - It uses a lot of energy, which comes from burning oil or coal.
- How can people save energy?	- They can use cars less. - They can switch off lights.
- How can we keep fit?	- We can walk or cycle more.
- How often do you travel by car?	-I travel by car two or three times a week.

✍ ***Respond to each of the following situations:***

1- Your friend asks you how you can keep fit. What do you say?
2- Someone asks you how you often travel to school by. How do you reply?
3- You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is "geothermal". What do you ask?

4- You want to know how your friend usually goes to school. What do you ask?
5- Someone asks you how air conditioning damages the environment. How do you reply?
6- Someone asks you if you think the price of oil will increase in the future. What do you say?
7- You are doing a survey about pollution in your town. You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.

Test on Unit 3

1- Respond to the following situations:

1-You are doing a survey about energy in your town. You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.
2-You want to know about a friend's energy-saving habits. What do you ask?
3-You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is "hydroelectric". What do you ask?
4-Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day. How do you reply?

2- Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are: (June, 2008)

1.A. How old is this mummy?
B. It's about 4000 years old.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....
2- A: How would you like to pay for this suit, sir?
B: By credit card
A: Well. Shall I put it in a bag for you, sir?
B: Yes, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1-You send a liquid or gas through a (pipe – hole – type – bump) to move it to another place.
2-Electricity is produced in a (tower – Flour – Power – Sour) station.
3-(Pressure – Friction – Treasure – Leisure) is the force produced when two things push against each other.
4-(Diesel – Oil – Petrol – Coal) is a hard black fossil fuel from underground.
5-When atoms are split, (nuclear – hydroelectric – solar – biological) energy is produced.
6-If you make rock or metal very hot, it becomes (melted – solidified – frozen – molten).
7-Water is the (liquid – gaseous – solid - hard) form of ice.
8-Water passing through a dam produces (atmospheric – phosphoric – hydroelectric - prehistoric) power.
9- The buses (are running – runs – run – running) less frequently on Sundays.
10-He usually (gets – is getting – has got – to get) home about 6 o'clock.
11-Your health (has been - is – had been – are) generally good, but you do have a few minor problems.
12-He (waters – has watered – is watering – had watered) at the moment.
13-As soon as he (gets – had got – will get – is getting) the cheque, he will pay his debt.
14-I (understood - understand – am understanding – was understanding) everything now.
15-After he (do – is doing – has done – had done) the shopping, he will visit a friend.
16-Trees are sometimes (blow – blew – blown – blows) down in the night.

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1- She is being in London now.

01000453264 01287277089

2-His house is heating by the sun.
3-We are used petrol in our cars.
4-Wind turbines along the Red Sea in Egypt exaggerate large amounts of electricity.
5-Nuclear power produces dangerous waist.
6-Energy from the sun is the best form of readable energy.

5- Read the following passage then answer the questions: (June, 2008)

Picture the scene: a young woman is walking to her car in a multi - storey car park late at night. Suddenly, a man jumps out at her from behind a column. She performs some fancy moves, kicks him and while he is on the floor, she jumps into her car and drives away unharmed.

This scenario should teach you three important things: real life is nothing like in films; never walk alone at night whether you are a man or a woman, and most importantly use your brain and not your body to defend yourself against an attack.

Staying safe is all about not putting yourself in a dangerous situation. Avoid a potential attack before it happens by using your common sense. This means don't go out alone at night, stay in well lit areas, make sure someone always knows where you are, walk with confidence and carry a mobile phone with you. Basically, don't make yourself a target. Attackers look for people who are vulnerable.

If you do find yourself in a dangerous situation, where you are being threatened, try and defuse it. That is, try not to make the situation worse by trying to fight. The best defence is to remove yourself from the situation. Calmly walk away, run as fast as you can, or eventually you can use your force.

A.Answer the following questions:

1. What is the writer's purpose in writing this text ?
2. What precautions should we take to avoid dangerous situations ?
3. What does the writer mean by: "common sense"
4. How should a person react when he feels threatened ?

B.Choose the correct answer:

5- Attackers look for people who ------------------.
a) have mobile phones. b) are confident.
c) are aware of their surroundings. d) are easy targets.

6- You may use your physical force ----------------------.
a) at the beginning of the attack b) as a second solution
c) at the end of the attack d) after you run away

7- A person who is unable to protect himself is ----------------------.
a) potential b) lazy c) defenseless d) unharmed

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

It was a very foggy day in London. Mr. Smith arrived from Edinburgh to go to a very important meeting, but no buses or taxis were running because of the fog. It was nine o'clock and his meeting was at ten, so he thought he would walk to the office where it was going to be. But nobody was even trying to walk anywhere.

While he was standing there, a young man came up to him and said, "Sir, if you want to go somewhere, I can guide you."

Mr. Smith was surprised and said, "How can you find the way in this fog?"

"Don't worry, sir," answered the man. So Mr. Smith told the young man where he wanted to go. They walked quite fast. At last Mr. Smith thought, "Perhaps this man is mad, or a thief." But a minute later, the young man stopped and said, "Here is the place, sir." Mr. Smith was surprised to find that he reached the office. He gave the young man a pound and then said, "How did you find the way in the fog?"

"I'm blind, sir," answered the young man, "but I know London well, and it is exactly the same in the fog"

Answer the following questions:

1-Why couldn't Mr. Smith find a bus or taxi?

2-What do you think of the blind man?

3-What does the underlined word it refer to?

Choose the correct answer:

4-The meeting was going to be in (Edinburgh – Scotland – London – Glasgow).

5-Mr. Smith rewarded the blind man by (walking with him – giving him money – thinking he was mad – telling him a funny story).

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words on the following subject: (June, 2008)

The various ways through which people can keep good health and fitness

9- A)Translate into Arabic: (June, 2008)

Egypt aims at attracting Arab and foreign capital for investment. So, the Egyptian government should encourage setting up new factories for modern industries. It should also develop the existing ones.

B) Translate into English:

1- نحن نعيش الآن في عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالما مفتوحا.

2- كثير من أنواع النبات و الحيوان سوف تنقرض بسبب التلوث

Review A

Listening

Ahmed: hi, Omar.
Omar: hello, Ahmed.
Ahmed: did you see that television program last night about energy from the sea?
Omar: no, I didn't. I had too much homework. Was it interesting?
Ahmed: yes, it was really interesting. It showed how electricity can be generated by waves.
Omar: that sounds like a good idea. How do they do it?
Ahmed: they use snakes.
Omar: snakes?
Ahmed: not real snakes! Snakes made of rubber.
Omar: really? How do they work?
Ahmed: well, this snakes are nine metres long. One and is attached to the sea bed. As the waves move, the snake goes up and down and this generates electricity.
Omar: nine metres! That's very long, isn't it?
Ahmed: yes, but in future, they'll probably be 200 meters long.
Omar: that's amazing!
Ahmed: they're going to make wave farms with 50 or more snakes in one place.
Omar: really? Isn't it dangers for ships to have so many of these things in the sea?
Ahmed: yes, the snakes are just under the surface, so ships shouldn't be permitted near the farms.
Omar: Are they expensive to produce?
Ahmed: not really- the snakes themselves are very simple. There are hardly any moving parts, so nothing much can go wrong. And they produce cheap electricity.
Omar: that's good, isn't it? There will always be waves, so it means in the future will never run out of energy.

Reading	**Fast forward**	



You are driving your smart car along the motorway from Cairo to Aswan when something goes wrong with the engine. You do not know what the problem is, but the computer in your car will help you. It will examine the engine and find what is wrong. It will then connect to the Internet to find the distance to the nearest garage where your car can be repaired. The computer will then send an e-mail to the garage to check that it has the parts you need for your car. If the garage has these, you will receive an e-mail asking when you would like to take your car to be repaired. You reply on your mobile phone which will e-mail your message to the garage. In this way, your car's engine problems will be solved.
There's also a device which will control how fast you can drive on the road you are on. It does not matter what you do, it will be impossible to drive faster than what the device tells the engine. Experts have found that this device will reduce the number of road accidents and save thousands of lives every year.
If this just a science fiction? No, both these devices are currently being used. You can find information about them on the Internet. Drivers all over the world are already using sat-nav systems to tell them

01000453264 01287277089

where they are and how to get to a destination. In the future, technology will also help them to solve engine problems and to keep everyone safe.

New Vocabulary

Waves	**امواج**	**motorway**	**طريق سريع**	**sat-nav**	ملاحة بالقمر الصناعي
Rubber	**مطاط**	**repair**	**يصلح**	**destination**	**جهة وصول**
attached to	**ملتصق**	**check**	**يفحص- يراجع**	**engine**	**محرك**
Permit	**يسمح**	**device**	**جهاز**	**keep**	**يحافظ علي**
Hardly	**بالكاد**	**Experts**	**خبراء**	**Solve**	**يحل**
go wrong	**يسوء**	**reduce**	**يقلل - يخفض**	**save**	**يدخر- ينقذ**

Review A

1. What would you say in these situations

a - A friend asks you the time of the next lesson.
b – Someone asks you to predict tomorrow's weather
c – Your parents ask what you have planned to do at the weekend.
d – A friend asks what exams you have this year.
e- Recommend a book to a friend.
f- A friend wants to know the train times to Cairo.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Millions of people watched the rocket ....on TV.
   a- start **b- launch** **c- set off** **d- beginning**
2. The medicine im taking is wonderful . It has no side................... .
   a- results **b- damage** **c- effects** **d- problems**
3. My brother and I aren't twins, but we are very ....
   a- alike **b- same** **c- like** **d- correct**
4. Coal and oil are two kinds of fossil ....
   a- petrol **b- gas** **c- energy** **d- fuels**
5. Electricity is produced in a ....station.
   a- bus **b- railway** **c- power** **d- energy**
6. I expect ....you at the weekend.
   a- I am going to see **b- I will see** **c- I am seeing** **d- I see**
7. The film ....at 7.30 this evening.
   a- starts **b- will start** **c- is starting** **d- is going to start**
8. How ....times have you seen that film?
   a- many **b- much** **c- lots** **d- different**
9. The distance from here to Cairo ....two km.
   a- are **b- has been** **c- is** **d- is being**
10. In some places wood ....to heat people's homes.
   a- are burnt **b- burns** **c- burnt** **d- is burnt**

3. find and Correct the mistake in each sentence:

1- I've decided that I'm doing more exercise in future.
2- it is a really good film. I am sure you enjoy it.
3- Thirty kilometres are a long way to walk in hot weather.
4- Millions of cars produce by Japanese companies every year.
5- In many countries , children take the right to go to school until the age of 16.
6- Electricity is produced in energy stations.

4. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

01000453264 01287277089

Thomas Edison

It is difficult to believe that less than a 150 years ago, we could not switch on lights in our homes when it went dark. People who wanted to work or study at night had to use gas or oil lights.

Electric light bulbs wee invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison, who also helped produce the system of getting electricity from where it was generated to where it was used.

Edison was a very intelligent man, but when he was at school his teachers didn't realize this. He had to leave school at the age of seven because he asked too many questions. His mother realized that he only asked questions because he was interested, so she educated him at home.

The General Electric Company, which Edison started, still supplies most of the electricity in North America today.

1- What three forms of energy are referred to in the article?

2- As well as light bulbs, what did Thomas Edison invent?

3- Why did Edison have to leave school at the age of seven?

4- Which of the following is true?

a- Edison invented electricity.

b- Edison never went to school

c – Edison was taught by one of his parents.

d- Edison is still the owner of the General Electric Company

5- What does generate mean in the phrase generate electricity?

a- produce b- use c-invent d- find

5-Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning .

1- At the moment, my father works in Cairo . (Currently)

2- My plan is to study hard all week. (going)

3- I predict a sandstorm. (will)

4- Many people burn wood for heating and cooking. (is burnt)

5- It is two kilometres from here to the park . (distance)

7 .Translation :

Translate into Arabic:

Currently, the cost of a holiday in space is very high .But the more people want something, the cheaper it will become .So if you are interested, start saving now!

Translate into English :

1- ان الطاقة الذرية مصدر خير للانسان اذا أحسن استغلالها.

2- ان الطاقة الذرية سلاح ذو حدين فهى نعمة فى وقت السلم ونقمة فى وقت الحرب

01000453264 01287277089

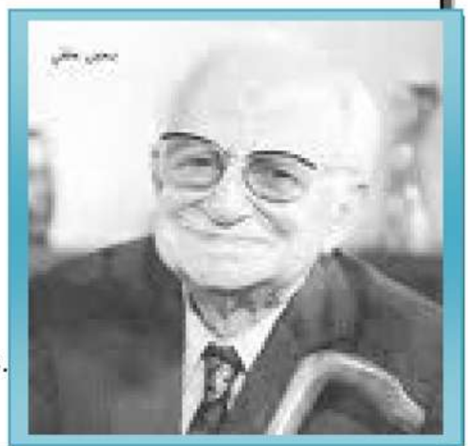
Unit 4: Writers and Stories

Writers and stories

Interviewer: when did you start writing?
Writer: I have written stories and poems for as long as I can remember.
Interviewer: what was the first thing you wrote?
Writer: when I was seven, I wrote a **poem** which won 2nd prize in a **national competition for** school children.
Interviewer: when did you start writing stories?
Writer: when I was at university I wrote short stories for student magazine. My head was always **full of** ideas. While I was finishing one story, I was **thinking of** the next one.
Interviewer: wasn't that very confusing?
Writer: not really. I **used to write** very quickly- I finished most short stories in two or three days. As soon as I'd finished one story, I'd start the next one.
Interviewer: do you still write like that?
Writer: no, I haven't written any short stories for over 20 years. Now I only write novels - they take much longer.
Interviewer: so how do write now? Do you have a **fixed routine**?
Writer: yes. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with **a ten minute break** for coffee **at midday**. I write **an average of** a thousand words a day.
Interviewer: do you use a computer?
Writer: no, I'm **old-fashioned**- I use a pencil and paper. I've tried using a computer, but it gave me a **headache**. When I'm **happy with** what I've written, my secretary types it **onto** the computer. My publisher insists that I send everything as **an e-mail attachment**.
Interviewer: and do you **check** what you've written?
Writer: of course. I write one thousand new words a day for a week, then I **spend** two or three days **checking** the week's work until I'm completely happy with what I've written. My last novel was changed six times before I was happy with it.
Interviewer: Do you show other people?
Writer: no, not until a novel's almost finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and **ask** them **for** the opinions.
Interviewer: do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written?
Writer: yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.
Interviewer: that's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me.

Reading — Yehia Haqqi (1905-1992)

Yehia Haqqi was one of the **pioneers** of modern Egyptian literature. As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.
Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyada Zeinab **district** of Cairo.He graduated in **law** and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences he later used in his writing.
At the same time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories.



Ahmed Saeed

first short story, published in 1925, **established** him as one of the greatest short story writers of the Arab world.
Haqqi always wanted to help poor and disabled people. He had to go to hospital after an earthquake in Cairo, but gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more. In 1955, he wrote a collection of short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize.
Another of his stories, the postman, was made into a film.
Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and **customs** in the twentieth century. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he **developed** a new **style** of writing which is respected today.
As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer in the power of education and supported many young Egyptian writers.
Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

Key Vocabulary

competition	مسابقة / منافسة	develop	يطور / ينمى
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	district	حى سكنى / مقاطعة / منطقة
routine	الروتين	establish	يؤسس / يثبت / يرسخ
attachments	مرفقات	law	قانون
midday	منتصف اليوم	pioneer	رائد
custom	عادة	style	أسلوب
publisher	ناشر	prize	جائزة

Key Vocabulary

interpret	يفسر	respected position	مكانة / وظيفة محترمة
explosion	انفجار	rules	قواعد
explode	ينفجر	obey	يطيع
report	تقرير	period	فترة
organisation	منظمة	literature	الأدب
national	قومى / وطنى	culture	الثقافة
confusing	محير / مُربك	career	الحياة العملية
fixed	ثابت / محدد	diplomat	رجل دبلوماسى
average	متوسط	diplomacy	الدبلوماسية
insist	يصر على	diplomatic	دبلوماسى
article	مقالة	experiences	خبرات / تجارب (الحياة)
extra	زيادة	disabled	معوق
syllable	مقطع (فى كلمة)	disability	اعاقة
editor	محرر (صحفى)	postman	ساعى البريد
deliver	يوصل	tour guide	مرشد سياحى
sound	يبدو	journalist	صحفى
collect	يجمع	lawyer	محامى
collection	مجموعة	editor	محرر صحفى
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	author	مؤلف
society	مجتمع	travel agent	وكيل سياحى
traditional	تقليدى	politician	رجل سياسة
produce	ينتج	political	سياسة
product	منتج	Russian	روسى

achieve	يحقق / ينجز	Italian	ايطالى
achievement	انجاز	Turkish	تركى

a sports teacher	مدرس ألعاب	tools	أدوات
regard = consider	يعتبر	handle	يتعامل مع
support	يؤيد / يدعم	skills	مهارات
article	مقالة	flexible	مرن
fiction	الأدب القصصى / خيال	readily	بسهولة / حالا
heart transplant	زراعة القلب	challenge	يتحدى / التحدى
create	يخلق	retire	يتقاعد
beliefs	معتقدات	usage	استخدام
behaviour	سلوك	reinforce	يدعم / يعزز / يقوى
graduate	يتخرج / خريج	encounter	يواجه / يقابل
experience	يجرب / يعانى	tolerant	متسامح
widen	يوسع	emphatic	مشارك للآخرين
horizons	مدارك / آفاق	opportunity	فرصة
revise	يراجع	park	منتزه / مكان انتظار السيارات
exactly	تماما	excellent	ممتاز
particular area	منطقة معينة	training	تدريب
describe	يصف	soldier	جندى

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

at night	فى الليل	attach ... to	يلحق / يوصل ... بـ
at midday	فى منتصف اليوم	be made into	يتم تحويله الى
at midnight	فى منتصف الليل	an expert on / at / in	خبير فى
at dawn	فى الفجر	graduate in law	يتخرج فى القانون
a believer in	مؤمن بـ	typical of	له نفس صفات أو مزايا كذا
compete with	يتنافس مع	succeed in	ينجح فى
happy with	سعيد بـ	adjust to	يتكيف / يتأقلم على
available for	ملائم لـ / مناسب لـ	It gave me a headache	سبب لى صداعا
provide a model for	يقدم نموذج أو قدوة لـ	It's a pleasure	يسعدنى ذلك
do the homework	يحل الواجب	go out	يطفى (النور)
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	establish himself as	يحقق لنفسه مكانة كـ
e-mail attachments	مرفقات بالايميل	work for a publisher	يعمل لدى ناشر
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة	look old fashioned	يبدو موضة قديمة
interested in	مهتم بـ	have lunch	يتناول الغداء
give in	يسلم / يستسلم	at least	على الأقل

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	fashionable	على الموضة
national	وطنى	international	عالمى
flexible	مرن	inflexible	غير مرن
experienced	ذو خبرة	inexperienced	بلا خبرة
simple	بسيط	complicated	معقد
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة

01000453264 01287277089

attach يلحق / يرفق	attachment مرفق	attached مرفق / ملحق
compete ينافس / يتنافس	competition منافسة	competitive تنافسى
publish ينشر	publisher ناشر	published منشور
	fashion موضة	fashionable مساير للموضة
	law قانون	lawyer محامى
collect يجمع	collection مجموعة	collective جمعى
write يكتب	writer كاتب	written مكتوب

Definitions تعريفات

Competition منافسة مسابقة	a situation in which people or organisations compete with each other
old-fashioned	not modern and not fashionable any more
Routine الروتين	the usual way in which you do things
Midday منتصف اليوم	Twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.
Publisher ناشر	person or company that produces books, magazines, etc., and makes them available for people to buy
Attachments ملحقات	something you attach to/send with an e-mail
Custom عادة	something that people do in a society because it is traditional
Develop يطور / ينمى	to make a new product or idea successful
District حى سكنى مقاطعة / منطقة	an area of a city or country
Establish يؤسس يثبت / يرسخ	to achieve or give someone a respected position in society or in an organisation

Law قانون	the system of rules that people in a country or place must obey
Pioneer رائد	one of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop
Style أسلوب	a way of doing or making something that is typical of a particular person, group or period

Confusable Words

routine	روتين (عمل نفس الأشياء فى نفس المواعيد كل يوم)
red tape	الروتين الحكومى (الإجراءات الحكومية التى تؤدى إلى تعطيل العمل)

Ex: Getting up at dawn is part of his daily **routine**.
After a lot of **red tape**, he got his passport.

win (won / won)	يفوز بـ / يكسب (يأتى بعده الشئ الذى نفوز به أو نكسبه)
beat (beat / beaten)	يهزم / يتغلب على (يأتى بعده الشخص أو الفريق المهزوم)
gain (gained / gained)	يكتسب / يزداد
earn (earned / earned)	يكسب (من العمل الجاد)

Ex: **win**: (a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة / a match / a game an award / a prize) يفوز بـ / يكسب
beat: (someone شخص / a team فريق) يهزم
gain: experience خبرة/information معلومات / Knowledge معرفة) يكتسب
(weight وزن / height طول/ speed سرعة) يزداد
earn money / his living يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)

habit	عادة (شخصية)	custom	عرف سائد فى المجتمع

Ex: I wish I could stop smoking. It is a very bad **habit**.
It is a **custom** in Western Europe for little boys to wear short pants بنطلون to school.

experience	خبرة (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقها أداة نكرة) و يقصد بها المعرفة و المهارات التى يكتسبها الانسان فى العمل)
experiences	مواقف / تجارب (و يقصد بها الأحداث التى يمر بها الانسان فى حياته)
experiment	تجربة (تستخدم عندما نتحدث عن العلماء و أبحاثهم)

Ex: I'm afraid I don't have much sales **experience**.
His **experiences** in Germany were rather depressing.
They did a number of **experiments** last week.

Language Notes

a ten-minute break	راحة / فسحة لمدة عشر دقائق

لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الدالة على الزمن أو الوقت اذا جاء قبلها عدد و بعدها اسم
Ex: a three-hour meeting اجتماع لمدة ثلاث ساعات
a two-week holiday اجازة لمدة اسبوعين

enjoy + v. + ing	يستمتع بـ

Ex: I **enjoy watching** football matches on television.

finish + v. + ing	ينتهى من

Ex: Have you **finished reading** the story?

the poor الفقراء – the disabled المعاقين the rich الأغنياء – the injured المصابون	قبل بعض الصفات يحول الصفة الى theالاستخدام اسم يدل على مجموعة

Ex: I read a collection of short stories about **the poor** and **the disabled**.

As well as + v. + ing / اسم	بالاضافة الى

Ex: **As well as writing** novels, he also translated French literature into Arabic.
He studied English **as well as French**.

a day / an hour	قبل كلمات معينة بمعني (في كل أو لكل) aتستخدم

Ex: Ali studies five hours **a day**.
He drives 80 miles **an hour**.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1-your friend thinks English is easy. You agree.
2- You think Egypt has the best football team in Africa.
3- You suggest going to the zoo.
4-A friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.
5-A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five.
6-1Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories. Give your opinion.
7-Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening,
8-You suggest going to the zoo.
9-You think Egypt has the best football team in Africa.
10-Your friend asks you what you think of Yehia Haqqi.
11-. Your friend thinks English is easy. You agree.

<u>Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:</u>
1-A: I'd like an extension of stay, please. B: How long have you been here?
A: Six months. B: How long would you like to extend your stay? A: 3 months.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B............... - Function...................... :

2-A: I'd like to get a visa to England, please? B: How long would you like to stay there?
A: Six months.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function........................ :

3-A: Good evening. I have a complaint. B: What is wrong?
A: My radio doesn't work. B: Don't worry; I'll repair it for you.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function........................ :

4-A: How much is it? B: it s 600 pounds. A: ok. I will need a blue one.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function........................ :

5-A: What is wrong with you? B: my tooth hurts.
A : open your mouth , please. Don't worry. I will pull it out.

Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function........................ :

6-A: Why didn't you do your homework? B: sorry, sir .I was too tired to do it.
A : ok , next time I see it.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

131. When I was seven, I wrote a poem which won 2nd prize in a national competition .... school children

a- for	b-to	c- with	d-by

132. When I was at university I .... short stories for student magazine.

a-write	b-writes	c-wrote	d-was writing

133. While I was finishing one story, I .... of the next one.

a-thought	b-thinking	c-was thinking	d- an thinking

134. I used to write very quickly- I finished most short stories .... two or three days.

a- in	b- for	c- since	d-to

135. I haven't written any short stories .... over 20 years.

a- for	b-since	c-till	d- in

136. I write from nine in the morning till three in the afternoon, with .... break for coffee at midday.

a-ten-minutes	b- ten minutes'	c- ten minute's	d- ten minute

137. I'm ....I use a pencil and paper. I've tried using a computer, but it gave me a headache.

a-fashionable	b- fashioned	c-old-fashioned	d-fashionably

138. When I'm happy .... what I've written, my secretary types it onto the computer.

a- to	b- for	c-by	d-with

139. My publisher .... that I send everything as an e-mail attachment.

a-persist	b- assist	c- insist	d- resist

140. I spend two or three days .... the week's work until I'm completely happy with what I've written.

a- to check	b- checking	c-check	d- to checking

S.B Exercise

141. Yehia Haqqi was one of the .... of modern Egyptian literature.

a- pioneers	b- leaders	c- chairmen	d-elites

142. As well as .... an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.

a- being	b- to be	c- be	d- having been

143. Yehia Haqqi was born in the Sayyida Zeinab .... of Cairo.

a- distinction	b- district	c-distract	d- distort

144. He graduated in ……. and worked for a short time as a lawyer.

a- **dew**	**b- law**	**c-low**	**d- sew**

145. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat

a- job	**b- profession**	**c- career**	**d- life**

146. He worked …….. for more than 20 years.

a- aboard	**b- broad**	**c- abroad**	**d- board**

147. The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him ……

A- experiencing	**b- experienced**	**c- Expert**	**d - experiences**

148. At the same time as he …………, Haqqi was also writing stories.

a- works	**b- worked**	**c- working**	**d- was working**

149. His first short story, published in 1925, ………………. him as one of the greatest short story writers of the Arab world.

a- set up	**b- establish**	**c- established**	**d- establishing**

150. Haqqi always wanted to help poor and …………. people.

a- abled	**b- able**	**c- disabled**	**d- enabled**

151. In 1955, he wrote a ………………. of short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize.

a- chain	**b- collection**	**c- series**	**d- set**

152. Another of his stories, the postman, was ……. a film.

a- made from	**b- made of**	**c- made by**	**d- made into**

153. Haqqi wrote in a new way about Arab society and …………….. in the twentieth century.

a- costumes	**b- consumes**	**c- customs**	**d- castes**

154. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he ………. a new style of writing which is respected today.

a- develop	**b- developed**	**c- developing**	**d- promoting**

155. As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish …………………into Arabic.

a- literature	**b- literary**	**c- litter**	**d- letter**

156. He was a very strong …………….. in the power of education and supported many young Egyptian writers.

a- belief	**b-believe**	**c- believer**	**d-believers**

157. Haqqi died in 1992, but is still thought of as the …………of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

a- son	**b- father**	**c- father-in-law**	**d- Mum**

W.B Exercise

158. Early black and white photos show people in ……….clothes.
a- fashionable **b- old-fashioned** **c- fashionably** **d- newly fashionable**

159. The sun is at its strongest at …………..
a- midnight **b- day** **c- afternoon** **d- midday**

160. I don't really have a ………during the holidays.
a- red tape **b- routine** **c- system** **d- rest**

161. My friend and I are going to enter an athletics ……….We all hope to win something.
a- game **b- tour** **c- course** **d- competition**

162. I sent an email with two …………. They were photos of my friends.
a- attachments **b- books** **c- contacts** **d- connections**

163. 12 pm is called ………………
a- midday **b- midnight** **c- mid year** **d- mid week**

164. I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple……..
a- way **b- method** **c- style** **d- type**

165. Yehia Haqqi came from a poor ……………of Cairo.
a- distract **b- district** **c- distort** **d- distinct**

01000453264 01287277089

166. My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, so he is studying ....at university.

a- law **b- low** **c- dew** **d- lewd**

167. Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant ....

a- doctors **b- surgeons** **c- surgeries** **d- physicians**

168. Scientists are paid to ....new medicines every year to help people.

a- look **b- create** **c- developing** **d- develop**

169. In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional ....that he used to follow when he was a boy.

a- customs **b- costumes** **c- consumes** **d- consumers**

170. My sister loves clothes and buys very ....dresses.

a- out of fashion **b- fashion** **c- fashionable** **d- old-fashioned**

171. His first job was as a ....

a- lower **b- lawyer** **c- lawful** **d- law**

172. A...............is someone who produces books , newspapers or magazines ..

a- publisher **b- publiciser** **c- writer** **d- editor**

173. My parents gave me a ....of modern short stories for my birthday.

a- set **b- collection** **c- collect** **d- series**

174. Yehia Haqqi was an important twentieth century................

a- writer **b- editor** **c- lawyer** **d- solicitor**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1 - A publicizer is someone who produces books, newspapers ,etc
2 - Before he left the country, he has paid all his debts.
3 - Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab distract of Cairo.
4 - He broaded the ship to Greece.
5 - He developed a new stile of writing.
6 - He graduated from law.
7 - He is a graduate in Assuit University.
8 - He is going to enter a reading commission and he is hoping to win it.
9 - He spent a three days holiday in Acapulco.
10 - He wanted to help the poor and the disability.
11 -He worked aboard for more than 20 years.
12 -He writes by a very simple style.
13 -He wrote two collisions of short stories.
14 -His novels were made of films.
15 - His training as a law affected the way he wrote his novels.
16 - I have a collocation of English books.
17 - I have insisted in getting the first prize.
18 - It is very hard for me to be used to the Europeans consumes.
19 -She doesn't receive the prize yet.
20 -She sent me her photograph as an e-mail detachment.
21 -The guide offered tourists information on local customary.
22 - This price reduction is due to complexion among suppliers.
23 - While he is being in London, he went shopping.
24 -Yehia Haqqi developed a new steel of writing which is respected today.
25 -Yehia Haqqi is a writer of children's infection.
26 -Yehia Haqqi is still thought of as the mother of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.
27 -Yehia Haqqi was a strong belief in the power of education.
28 - Yehia Haqqi was interested in the Arabic language and he developed a new steel of writing.
29 -Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literary.
30 -Yehia Haqqi worked like a diplomat.

6-Translate into Arabic:

01000453264 01287277089

1-As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French, Italian and Turkish literature into Arabic. He was a very strong believer in the power of education and supported many young Egyptian writers. He died in 1992, but is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

2 -Sports and games play an important role in building up the body and the character. Through sports, young people find an outlet to their energies. So, the government spares no effort to encourage sports.

7-Translate into English:

1- تفخر مصر بكتابها العظماء امثال نجيب محفوظ الحائز علي جائزة نوبل في الادب.

2-بساطة الاسلوب و سهولته اهم ما ميز يحي حقي.

Language Focus

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Form: التكوين

Active المبنى للمعلوم	التصريف الثانى للفعل
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Was / were + pp

Ex: At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordon.
At the age of seven, I **was taken** to Jordon by my parents.

Usage: الاستخدام

يعبر الماضى البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

- We **met** in 1987. - We **didn't meet** in Egypt. Where **did** we **meet**?

يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

Yesterday أمس - ago منذ last .. الماضى ... - In the past فى الماضى
Once ذات مرة - once upon a time ذات مرة - In old times فى العصور القديمة
In ancient times فى العصور القديمة - one day فى يوم من الأيام
The other day (week-month-year) منذ أيام (أسابيع / شهور / سنوات) قليلة
In 1999 - when I was young

Past Continuous Tense الماضى المستمر

Form: التكوين

Active المبنى للمعلوم	was / were + v. + ing
Passive المبنى للمجهول	was / were + being + pp

Ex: Somebody phoned me while I **was cooking** the dinner.
Somebody phoned me while the dinner **was being cooked**.

Usage: الاستخدام

يعبر الماضى المستمر عن حدث مستمر أثناء وقت معين فى الماضى.

- Between six and half past six this morning, I **was having** breakfast.

يعبر الماضى المستمر عن حدث كان مستمرا عندما قطعه حدث آخر فى الماضى.

- I **was having** a shower when the phone rang.

يعبر الماضى المستمر عن حدثين كانا يحدثان فى نفس الوقت.

01000453264 01287277089

- While father **was watching** TV, mother **was cooking** in the kitchen.

يستخدم الماضى المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية:

while بينما - as بينما - just as فى اللحظة التى - when عندما
all day yesterday = the whole day yesterday طوال اليوم أمس
all the time طوال الوقت - for an hour yesterday لمدة ساعة أمس

- **While** he **was leaving** the house, the phone **rang**.
- **As** he **was leaving** the house, the phone **rang**.
- **While Just as** he **was leaving** the house, the phone **rang**.

ماضى بسيط ثم ماضى مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى. when يمكن أن يأتى بعد

- I **was studying** English **when** the lights went out.
- The lights **went** out **when** I **was studying** English.

ماضى مستمر و الفعل الأخر ماضى بسيط. because يمكن أن يأتى بعد

- Magdy **couldn't** hear the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

نستخدم فعل ينتهى بـ ing : فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد while

- **While I was having** lunch, the phone rang.

أو اسم:ing و يأتى بعدها فعل ينتهى بـ While بدلا من During يمكن أن نستخدم

- **During having** lunch, the phone rang.
- **During my lunchtime**, the phone rang.

أو اسم:ing و يأتى بعدها فعل ينتهى بـ When بدلا من on يمن أن نستخدم

- **On seeing** the police, the thief ran away.

Past Perfect زمن الماضى التام

Form: التكوين

Active	مبنى للمعلوم	had + pp
Passive	مبنى للمجهول	had been + pp

Ex: As soon as he had taken the photograph, he showed it to his friend.
As soon as the photograph had been taken, it was shown to his friend.

usage: الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضى التام للتعبير عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.

يستخدم الماضى التام مع هذه الروابط:

After / When / As soon as + past perfect + past simple
Before / By the time + past simple + past perfect
Negative past simple + till / until + past perfect

Ex: **After** he **had done** his homework, he **watched** television.
When he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.
As soon as he **had found** a place, he **parked** his car.
Before he **parked** TV, he **had found** a place.
By the time the police **arrived**, the thief **had escaped**.
He **didn't park** his car **until** he **had found** a place.

Present perfect simple tense زمن المضارع التام

Form: التكوين

Active	مبنى للمعلوم	Has / have + pp
Passive	مبنى للمجهول	Has / have + been + pp

Ex: Something is wrong with his car, so he has taken it to the garage.
Something is wrong with his car, so it has been taken to the garage.

01000453264 01287277089

✍ Usage: الاستخدام

✍يعبر المضارع التام عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى و مازال مستمرا فى الحاضر.
- I **have lived** in Cairo for many years. = I still live there.

✍يعبر المضارع التام عن حدث انتهى فى الماضى و لازالت آثاره باقية حتى الآن.
- I**'ve lost** my keys. = I can't open the door.

✍يستخدم المضارع التام مع هذه الكلمات.

• **already**: تأتى فى الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة
- **Have** you **already** **written** to John?
- He **has already** had dinner.
- I **have seen** the film **already**.

• **just**: تأتى فى الجمل المثبتة
- **I've** just **spoken** to Ahmed on the phone.

• **yet**: تأتى فى نهاية الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية
- **Has** he **arrived yet**?
- They **haven't eaten yet**.

• **ever**:
no one / no body / nothing تأتى فى الأسئلة و بعد صفات التفضيل و الجمل التى تبدأ بـ
- **Have** you **ever been** to the zoo?
- This is **the most exciting** film I have **ever** seen.
- Nothing like this **has ever happened** to us.

• **never**: تستخدم فى الجمل المنفية
- No, I **have never been** to the zoo.

• **so far / lately / recently**:
- He **has typed** five letters **so far**.
- It **has been** hot **lately**.
- He **has bought** a new mobile **recently**.

• **for**: و يأتى بعدها مدة زمنية
- He **has lived** in Cairo **for** 10 years.

• **since**: يأتى بعدها بداية الحدث أو جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط
- I **haven't seen** him **since** last week.
- I **haven't seen** him **since** he **left** for Cairo.

It's the first time I **have ever seen** a lion.

•لاحظ التركيب التالى:

It's / It's been + مدة زمنية + since ماضى بسيط مثبت

- It's ages **since** I last **saw** him.

✍كما يستخدم المضارع التام مع هذه التعبيرات

• It's/This is the first (second ...) time .....
• It's (This) is the only ......
• In the last few years / months فى السنوات الأخيرة
• In recent years فى السنوات الحديثة
• over the ages / over the years / over the centuries علي مر العصور/ السنين/القرون

Ex: It's the first time I **have been** to London.
This is the only friend I **have met** there.
Egypt **has changed** a lot in the last few years.

Used to + inf. اعتاد على

✍ للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف فى الماضى و الحاضر. used to + نستخدم مصدر
- He **used to swim** everyday. He doesn't do this now.
- He **used to smoke**, but now he doesn't.

✍ وفي حالة النفى نستخدم: didn't use + مصدر :

01000453264 01287277089

- I **didn't use to play** computer games, but now I do.

وفي حالة السؤال نستخدم: did + فاعل + to + مصدر ✍

- **Did you use to walk** to school?
- Where **did you use to live**?

ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط: used to بدلا من no longer تستخدم ✍

- He **used to smoke**. = He **no longer smokes**.

مع نفى الفعل في المضارع البسيط و تأتى في نهاية الجملة: used to بدلا من any more / any longer تستخدم ✍

- He **used to smoke**. = He **doesn't smoke any more**.

S.B

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

70. I ....stories for as long as can remember .
a- was writing b- am writing c- have written d- written
71. When I was seven, I .... a poem which won a prize.
a- is writing b- wrote c- have written d- written
72. While I was finishing one story, I ....of the next one.
a- thinking c- thought
b- was thinking d- have thought
73. I used to ....very quickly.
a- be written b- write c- writing d- be writing
74. As soon as I ....a story, I sent it to the magazine editor.
a-'d finished b- have finished c- finished d- finish
75. My last novel ....six times.
a- was changed b- changed c- changing d- changes
76. This book ....by a famous writer.
a- was written b- written c- wrote d- was writing
77. I .... reading novels since I was a young child.
a- enjoy b- enjoyed c- have enjoyed d- had enjoyed
78. Yesterday, my sister gave, me a book she ....reading the day before.
a- finished b- has finished c- had finished d- finishes
79. It ....while I was reading the newspaper..
a- delivered b- delivers c- was delivered d- was being delivered
80. I....... at least one book a week, but now I don't read so many..
a- have read b- didn't read c- was reading d- read
81. I ....football for three years.
a- play b- have played c- was playing d- had played
82. I ....a car accident while coming to school.
a- was seeing b- saw c- see d- have seen
83. I ....at six o'clock yesterday evening.
a- slept b- was sleeping c- have slept d- sleep

W.B

3-Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

84. I ....the newspaper everyday .Now I don't have the time.
a- used to read b- was reading c- had read d- have read
85. As soon as we arrived at school , the first lesson ....
a- had begun b- began c- begins d- has begun
86. I ....the film before I read the book.
a- already saw b- have already seen c- had already seen d- has already seen
87. What ....when I called you? You seemed very busy.
a- did you do b- were you doing c- are you doing d- have you been doing
88. I ....my computer for three years now.
a- have been having b- was having c- had d- have had
89. While she ....her homework, she was listening to music.
a- were doing b- was doing c- did d- doing

More Exercises

1-When the telephone rang, they-------------the match.

a- watched	**b-had watched**	**c-were watching**	**d-watch**

2-He-------the tree when he suddenly fell down.

a – climbed	**b-climbs**	**c-was climbing**	**d-will climb**

3-They -----------for England an hour ago.

a- leave	**b-left**	**c-were leaving**	**d-will leave**

4-On--------------the film, Ali came.

a – watch	**b-watches**	**c-watched**	**d-watching**

5-They saw the fighting people while----------------home.

a- were driving	**b-drove**	**c-driving**	**d-drive**

6-How did he--------------to Aswan yesterday?

a- **go**	**b-went**	**c-going**	**d-goes**

7-My sister------------the room while I was making tea.

a- **cleaned**	**b-was cleaning**	**c-is cleaning**	**d-cleans**

8-The first map-------------------   ----by El_idrissi .

a -was drawn	**b-drew**	**c-is drawn**	**d-draws**

9-She cut herself while----------------------

a – cook	**b-cooked**	**c-was cooking**	**d-cooking**

10-What were you doing when I ------------you last night.

a – phoned	**b-was phoning**	**c-had phoned**	**d-would phone**

11 – He-------------the guitar, when I saw him.

a – play	**b – played**	**c – was playing**	**d – had played.**

12 – They saw the accident while----------------home.

a – were driving	**b – drove**	**c – driving**	**d – drive**

13 – They ------out of the bank when the policeman caught them.

a – ran	**b – were running**	**c – had run**	**d – are running**

14 – The Pyramids were----------------by the ancient Egyptians.

a – building	**b – built**	**c – builds**	**d – build**

15 – While she was cooking , her sister -------------homework.

a – was doing	**b – did**	**c – does**	**d – had done**

16 – As he was carrying the vase, he ------------------it on the floor.

a – drops	**b – dropped**	**c – had dropped**	**d – was dropping**

17-They--------since last year.

a - hadn't met	**b-haven't met**	**c-didn't meet**	**d-won't me**

18-We -----------some difficulty recently with Maths.

a – had	**b- have had**	**c- are having**	**d -were having**

19- I haven't written a letter since I ---------to England.

a – travelled	**b -will travel**	**c -have travelled**	**d -travel**

20-Shakespeare----------------37 plays.

a - has written	**b-wrote**	**c-had written**	**d-was written**

21-The e-mails--------------------by Ayman.

a - have written	**b-has written**	**c-have been written**	**d-has been written**

01000453264

01287277089

22-Don't tell him. He has---------------known.

a – already	b-yet	c-since	d-recent

23-He was born -----------------2006.

a – in	**b-since**	**c-at**	**d-for**

24-My brother---------to Paris, he came back last week.

a - is going	**b-will go**	**c -has gone**	**d-has been**

25-They haven't visited us-----------------the last two years.

a – since	**b –for**	**c-recently**	**d-already**

26-He hasn't studied English------------------------

a – recently	**b-lately**	**c-ago**	**d-just**

27-Since I graduated, I ----------------------in this company.

a – worked	**b-had worked**	**c-have been working**	**d-will work**

28-He -------------------the bike for an hour but he hasn't finished yet.

a - has been mending	**b-has mended**	**c-will mend**	**d-mended**

29- I prefer swimming----------------skating.

a – on	**b –to**	**c-than**	**d-over**

30-I last-------------my friend was last week.

a – see	**b-saw**	**c-has seen**	**d-have seen**

31-It is ages since we-------------------some good news.

a - have heard	**b-had heard**	**c-heard**	**d-was hearing**

32-Have you done your homework----------------? That is too fast.

a – yet	**b-so far**	**c-since**	**d-already**

28----------------I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends.

a – Because	**b –While**	**c-If**	**d-Although**

4-Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

-1

1 -A lot of people are thinking that life will be better in the future.
2 . Alaa has been to France, he is still there.
3 . Alexandria was the last place I was spending a holiday.
4 . By the time my father was 18, he has been at work for two years.
5 . Gamal Abd El Nasr has built the High Dam.
6 . Have you ever play computer games.
7 . He didn't helped me last week.
8 .He has been watching the film since the last hour.
9 . He has gone to Italy. Now he is in Cairo.
10 --He hasn't written letters recently.
11 . He leaves school and worked in a bookshop.
12 .He preferred read books to selling them.
13 .He realized that he has been robbed of his money.
14 . He thinks he wanted to be a scientist.
15 . He would give me back my money a few hours ago.
16 .I am understanding this math problem very well.
17 . I didn't eat hamburger since last October.
18 . I don't have any cash on me, so could I pay by click?
19 .I don't speak to him since Christmas.

01000453264 01287277089

20 .I had just seen my friend Mona.
21 .I have attended this school for five years.
22 . I have studied at 4 o'clock yesterday.
23 .I will see a good film recently.
24 .In 1999, I have visited my uncle in Alexandria.
25 .In the past, people thought that the earth has been flat.
26 .It's time he comes to school
27 . Just walking to school, I saw an accident
28 .My parents use to live in a small flat in the city centre.
29 .My sister is really happy. She is just winning the first prize.
30 .My sister wants to open a bank deposit.
31 .Our block built five years ago.
32 .Our school was opening exactly 25 years ago today.
33 .She has been mopping يمسح the floor when she heard the bad news on the radio.
34 . She is having a new car.
35 . She played the piano since the age of six and she still plays every day.
36 .She slipped on a banana skin and breaks her leg.
37 . The currency of The USA is the Euro.
38 .There has been a real grow in the number of people.
39 .They have been reading six books.
40 .Twenty million people saw the new film already.
41 .We have been taken exams before the holiday began.
42 .What were you doing when I am calling you?
43 . When my father come home, I was finishing my homework.
44 .While was returning home, he saw the accident.
45 .Yesterday evening we revised for our English test when all the lights went out.

6- Translate into Arabic:

Some Egyptian writers have written books and articles advocating the rights of women. They have called for women's equality with men. Now women have the same rights as men and even hold important positions in the society.

7- Translate into English:

1 – كانت عائشة عبد الرحمن (بنت الشاطئ) تكتب باسم مستعار بسبب التقاليد في المجتمع.
2 – السيرة الذاتية الشخصية يكتبها الشخص بنفسة

Language Functions

Asking for opinion طلب الرأى	Giving opinion اعطاء الرأى
How do you think (we can reduce pollution)?	I think that ..
What's your opinion about (modern novels)?	I don't think that ..
What do you think I should do (to improve my English)?	I'd say that ...
What do you think of / about (yesterday's match)?	As far as I am concerned .. In my opinion .. In my point of view ..

Respond to each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks for your opinion about the problem of pollution.

01000453264 01287277089

2- You ask a friend what he used to read when he was young.
3- Someone asks for your opinion about Yehia Haqqi.
4- You ask for your friend's opinion about modern technology.

Test on Unit 4

1-Respond to the following situations:

1-A friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.
2-Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening,
3-Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories. Give your opinion.
4-A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five.

2-Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1-A: I'd like an extension of stay, please.
B: How long have you been here?
A: Six months.
B: How long would you like to extend your stay?
A: 3 months .
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function: ....

2- A: I'd like to get a visa to England, please?
B: How long would you like to stay there?
A: Six months.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................. - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer:

1-Early black and white photos show people in (old-fashioned / ancient fashioned / new fashioned / torn) clothes.
2-The Sun is at its strongest at (midnight – midyear – dawn – midday.(
3-I do not really have a (protein - routine – valentine – bulletin) during the holidays.
4-My friend and I are going to enter an athletics (connection – combination – competition – compression). We all hope to win something.
5-I sent an e-mail with two (attachments – attainments – developments – adjustments) . They were photos of my friends.
6-I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple (direction – establishment – style – location.(
7-Yehia Haqqi came from a poor (district – restrict – instinct – distinct) of Cairo .
8-My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, so he's studying (low - law – blow – throw) at university .
9-The windows at school (have to clean – were cleaned – cleaned – has been cleaned) this morning.
10-My father (is taking – has taken – took – takes) me to the football match two days ago.
11-We (told – are telling – was told – were told) to give in our homework on Thursday.
12-There was a strong smell and the sound of frying. Obviously Mrs. Jones (cooks – was cooking – has cooked – was cooked) fish.
13-While the guests (were dancing – dance – have danced – had danced), thieves broke into the house and stole a lot of money.
14-How long (you know – do you know – have you known – you knew) Mr. Ahmed? – For ten years.

01000453264 01287277089

15-We (miss – had missed – are missing – have missed) the bus. Now, we'll have to walk.

16-After the room (paint – was painting – is painted – had been painted), they decorated it.

4-Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write it correctly:

1-He wrote two collisions of short stories.

2-Yehia Haqqi developed a new steel of writing which is respected today.

3-He is going to enter a reading commission and he is hoping to win it.

4-Before he left the country, he has paid all his debts.

5-While he is being in London, he went shopping.

6-She doesn't receive the prize yet.

5-Read the passage and answer the questions: (August, 2008)

Gold is a rare metal with a lovely glowing colour. It is easy to be shaped, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft, it can be beaten into very thin -sheets and it can also be drawn out into very fine wires. Gold is, therefore, an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewellery.

Moreover, the ancient Egyptians prized gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious gold objects in their pharaohs' tombs, and we can see many of them in the museums today. The Egyptians were very clever goldsmiths as they could beat gold into sheets.

The gold which is used to make jewellery is usually mixed with other metals. This not only makes the gold jewellery cheaper, but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore valuable, gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way.

Gold is usually buried deep underground. It can also be found in rivers and seas, but it would cost far more money to be extracted than the gold is worth .

A-Answer the following questions:

1-Why is gold considered an excellent material for making beautiful objects?

2-What did the ancient Egyptians do with gold? Why?

3-Where is gold usually found?

B-Choose the correct answer:

4-Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to.-------------------

a) keep it away from thieves b) change them into money
c) buy jewellery d) beat them into thin sheets

5-The word "prized" means.------------------

a) rewarded b) handed
c) valued d) sold

6-Read the passage then answer the questions :

Although the majority of people say that they work 'for money', the financial reward isn't actually the only thing that they think about. Recently research has shown that people consider many different factors to be of importance when they make their choice. A worldwide survey of students showed that after graduation they would be looking for jobs that allowed them to balance their personal lives with their work lives.

It's not just the younger generation who think like this either. There has even been an increase in the number of middle-aged workers who are moving away from highly-paid executive positions into less stressful jobs. They are looking for something which is more enjoyable and gives them more leisure time. All this has meant that employers

are realizing that they need to do more than just offer good wages if they are going to keep their workers happy and motivated.

A. Answer the following questions:

1-According to the text, what are young men and middle-aged workers looking for?

2-Find words in the passage which mean: a) jobs b) a short time ago

3-What does the underlined word them refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4-Most people seek work because they need (motivation – stress – money – balance.(

5-Stressful jobs are now (liked – desired – wanted – avoided) by a lot of people.

D- Writing

8-Write a letter to your friend Tamer who has been ill in hospital for three weeks. Your name is Samy.

9-A)Translate into Arabic: (August 2008(

Sports and games play an important role in building up the body and the character. Through sports, young people find an outlet to their energies. So, the government spares no effort to encourage sports.

B): Translate into English

1- يجب علي الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

2-ندرة المياه قد تكون سببا في اندلاع الحروب بين الدول في المستقبل .2 -3

Unit 5: Agatha Christie



Tape script



Presenter: Welcome to The Book Programme.
Today, our subject is the **queen** of English crime

fiction, Agatha Christie. You may never have read any of her books, but you probably know her name. To tell us more about her name, we have Professor Dunn from London University. Professor, could you tell us about Agatha Christie's life?

Professor Dunn: Well, Agatha Miller was born in 1890 and was the youngest of three children. She was a **shy** child who was very **close to** her family. She didn't go to school, but was taught at home by her mother. She started writing at a very young age and wrote all her life.

Presenter: Was she only a writer?

Professor Dunn: No, During the First World War she worked as a nurse, and while she was looking after wounded soldiers, she learned about medicines and poisons, information that was later used in her writing.

Presenter: And when was her first novel written?

Professor Dunn: In 1920, soon after the war ended.

Presenter: I remember reading that Agatha Christie **was deeply affected by** the death of her mother. Can you tell us about that?

Professor Dunn: Yes, when her mother died in 1926, Christie disappeared for about a week. Nobody knew where she was. Later, she could remember nothing about the week and is thought to have **suffered from amnesia.** Soon after this, Christie started travelling abroad. Her first journey, on the Orient Express train, was to Baghdad and the ancient city of Ur. On her second trip, she met the **archaeologist** Max Mallowan, whom she later married. She became very interested in **archaeology** and worked with her husband **on excavations** around Iraq. It's reported that she cleaned and repaired some of the things that were found herself.

Presenter: Some of her books are based on her travels to these countries, aren't they?

Professor Dunn: Yes, including famous novels like Murder on the Orient Express, Death on the Nile and Death Comes as the End, a dark story of a family in Ancient Egypt.

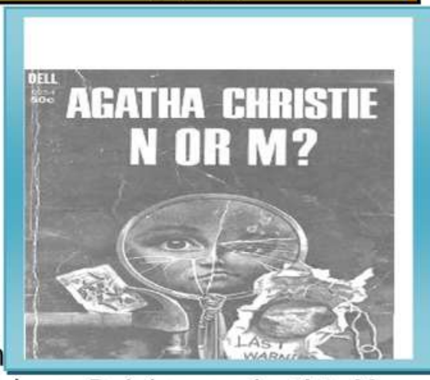
Presenter: And she continued writing all her life, didn't she?

Professor Dunn: yes, she did. In all she wrote eighty crime stories, many of which were **turned into films** or theatre plays. Her most famous play is The Mousetrap, which was first **performed** in 1952. Since then, the play has been performed without **a break** and is the longest-running play in the world.

Presenter: That's incredible!

Professor Dunn: It is. Her best books have been published in over a hundred countries and translated into over forty languages. Agatha Christie died **aged** 85, in 1976.

Reading	**N OR M?**	📖📚📚📚📚📖



It is a time of war in England and everyone knows that there could be an invasion **at any time**. The government knows that the enemy is being helped by a dangerous group of spies inside the country, but nobody knows their **identity**. But **it is believed** that the spies' headquarters is a small hotel on the coast, and the spies' leaders are a man and a woman Two secret agents, Tommy Beresford and his wife Tuppence, are sent to the hotel to find these spies.

They meet the other hotel guests and the people from the town. Th Bletchley, a retired soldier; Mrs. Sprot, a shy young woman; and Carl von Deinim, a scientist. Mr. Bletchley introduces Tommy to Mr. Haydock, a retired sailor who lives in a house **overlooking** the sea. The three men sometimes play golf together.

The Beresford's first **suspects** are the hotel owner and the scientist, but he soon discovered that both are **innocent**. Then they hear that the invasion is **planned for** the following week. This means they have seven days to find the enemy and **save** the country **from** invasion.

One day, after a game of golf, Tommy finds a radio transmitter **hidden** in Mr. Hay dock's bathroom and realizes that Haydock is one of the spies.

Ahmed Saeed

Haydock does not seem **worried by** Tommy's discovery. Tommy leaves its friend's house, but **on the way back to** his hotel, he's captured and **locked in** a room.

Tuppence discovers the other spy leader. To everyone's surprise, it is the shy Mrs. Sprot. The police arrest her and soon find Mr. Haydock. Tommy is **set free**. Without the help of the spies' leaders, the invasion cannot take place. Tommy and Tuppence have saved the country!

Key Vocabulary

amnesia	فقدان الذاكرة	identity	الهوية
excavation	التنقيب عن الآثار	innocent	برئ
mousetrap	مصيدة فئران	invasion	غزو
murder	جريمة قتل	secret agent	عميل سرى
poison	سم	spy	جاسوس
leader	قائد	espionage	الجاسوسية
shy	خجول	suspect	شخص مشتبه فيه / يشتبه فى
headquarters	مركز القيادة / المقر الرئيسى	transmitter	جهاز ارسال

Vocabulary

genre	نوع أو أسلوب أدبى	murder stories	قصص الجريمة
crime	جريمة	victim	ضحية
thriller	رواية مثيرة	equipment	معدات / أجهزة
science fiction	قصة خيال علمى	feed / fed / fed	يطعم
romance	قصة رومانسية	bang	يضرب بشدة
adventure	مغامرة	radio play	مسرحية اذاعية
biography	سيرة شخص	blind	أعمى
reference	مرجع	deaf	أصم
medical condition	حالة طبية	dumb	أبكم
dig / dug / dug	يحفر	guests	ضيوف
deliberately	عمدا	capture	يأسر / يستولى على
substance	مادة	design	يصمم / تصميم
queen	ملكة	tourist offices	مكاتب سياحية
wounded = injured	مصاب	military forces	القوات العسكرية
crime fiction	روايات الجريمة	radio signals	اشارات لاسلكية
disappear	يختفى	retired soldier	جندى متقاعد
Orient Express train	قطار الشرق السريع	overlook	يطل على
archaeologist	عالم آثار	hidden	مخبأ
archaeology	علم الآثار	hide / hid / hidden	يخبئ / يخفى
travels	رحلات	discovery	اكتشاف
including	بما فى ذلك	lock	يحبس
crime stories	قصص الجريمة	arrest	يقبض على
perform	يؤدى دور فى مسرحية	somewhere	فى مكان ما
the longest-running	تعرض لأطول فترة	identity card	البطاقة الشخصية
prove	يبرهن / يثبت	scandal	فضيحة
proof	برهان / اثبات	trial	محاكمة
evidence	دليل	witness	شاهد / يشهد / شهادة
qualities	صفات	court	محكمة
notice	يلاحظ	case	قضية
leaderless	بدون قائد	patient	صبور
brave		patriotic	محب لوطنه

shame	الخزى / العار	charity	جمعية خيرية

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

commit / do a crime	يرتكب جريمة	on the coast	على الساحل
nervous about	عصبى / خائف من	save ...... from	ينقذ ...... من
embarrassed about	يشعر بالاحراج من	on the way back to	فى طريق العودة الى
very close to	قريب جدا من	take place	يحدث
at a young age	فى سن صغيرة	to his surprise	لدهشته
welcome to	مرحبا بكم فى	set free	يطلق سراح
be deeply affected by	يتأثر تأثرا عميقا بـ	with the help of	بمساعدة
suffer from	يعانى من	take control	يسيطر / يتحكم
take the train	يركب القطار	in his forties	فى الاربعينات من عمره
Increase by ... %	يزداد بنسبة ... %	afraid of	خائف من
work on excavation	يعمل فى التنقيب	at the time of	فى وقت كذا
be based on	يقوم على أساس	escape from	يهرب من
over a hundred	أكثر من مائة	pass on information	ينقل معلومات
on his journey / trip	فى رحلته	compare ...... with	يقارن ...... بـ
without a break	بدون توقف	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
solve a crime	يحل الجريمة	go swimming	يذهب للسباحة
get information about	يحصل على معلومات عن	do a project on / about	يعمل مشروع عن
at any time	فى أى وقت	work on a crime	يعمل على حل جريمة

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
innocent	برئ	guilty	مذنب
disappear	يختفى	appear	يظهر
death	موت	life	حياة
war	حرب	peace	سلام
shy	خجول	bold	جرئ
brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
	crime جريمة criminal مجرم	criminal اجرامى
	shyness الخجل	shy خجول
poison يسمم	poison السم	poisonous سام
excavate ينقب عن الآثار	excavation التنقيب عن الآثار	
murder يقتل	murder جريمة قتل murderer قاتل	
invade يغزو	invasion غزو	
identify يتحقق من	identity الهوية	
	innocence براءة	innocent برئ
transmit يرسل	transmitter جهاز ارسال transmission ارسال	
suspect يشك أو يشتبه فى	suspect شخص مشتبه فيه suspicion اشتباه / شك	suspicious مرتاب / متشكك

Definitions تعريفات

Amnesia فقدان الذاكرة	Not being able to remember
Excavation التنقيب عن الآثار	Digging up the ground to find things from the past
Murder جريمة قتل	The crime of killing someone
Poison سم	Something that may kill or harm you if you eat or drink it
Shy خجول	Nervous and embarrassed about talking to other people
Mousetrap مصيدة فئران	A device for catching, and often killing mice
Leader قائد	A person who leads
Suspect شخص مشتبه فيه	Someone who may be guilty of a crime
Innocent برئ	Not guilty of a crime
Transmitter جهاز ارسال	Equipment that sends radio or television signals
Invasion غزو	Entering another country using military force to take control
Headquarters مركز القيادة / مركز العمليات	The place from which a company organisation or military action is controlled
Secret agent عميل سرى	someone who works for a government and tries to get secret information about another country or organisation
Spy جاسوس	someone whose job is to find out secret information about a country or organisation
Identity الهوية	Who someone is

Confusable Words

Be able to + مصدر يكون قادر على	Enable ... to + مصدر يمكن ... من
Be capable of + v. + ing يكون قادر على	

Ex: I'm sorry that I **wasn't able to phone** you yesterday.
Only the Democratic Party **is capable of running** the country.
Computers **enable us to work** faster.

shy خجول بطبيعته	ashamed يشعر بالخجل و الذنب من خطأ قام به

Ex: My children are very **shy** in front of strangers.
I'm sorry! I feel quite **ashamed** of myself for forgetting to post your letter.

include يشمل	including بما فى ذلك
contain يحتوى على (بداخله)	consist of يتكون من

Ex: The meal **includes** meat and rice.
Ten people **including** three children were injured in the accident.
I've lost a file **containing** a lot of important documents.
The team **consists of** four Europeans and two Americans.

By car / by taxi / by plane / by train / boat / ship / bus	نستخدمby قبل وسائل المواصلات اذا لم يسبقها شئ
In a (the/ my) car / taxi	نستخدمin قبل car / taxi إذا سبقهما شيء
On a (the / his) plane / train / boat / bus / ship	نستخدمon قبل باقي وسائل المواصلات إذا سبقها شيء
On foot / on horseback	و لكن نقول

Ex: They travelled across Europe **by train / car**.
We travelled to Alex **in our car**.
She'll be arriving **on the five-thirty train**.
It'd be quicker to get there **on foot**.

Language Notes

look forward to + v. + ing / اسم	يتطلع الى

Ex: I'm **looking forward to seeing** you.
We are **looking forward to the summer holidays**.

لاحظ أن أفعال الاحساس يليها صفة و اذا استخدمت كأسماء يسبقها صفة و هذ الأفعال هى
Feel / look / smell / sound / taste

Ex: That dress **looks nice**. = That dress has a **nice look**.
This cake **tastes strange**. = This cake has a **strange taste**.

What about + v. + ing / اسم ?	مارأيك فى / ماذا عن ...... ؟

Ex: **What about going** to thee club?
What about this dress?

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1. A friend asks for your advice about keeping fit. Advise him.
2. A friend wants to meet new people, but he/she is very shy. Make a recommendation.
3. Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.
4. You advise your friend who spends all night studying for the exam.
5. You want some advice from a friend about how you can eat more healthily. What do you ask?
6. Your friend advises you to have rest.
7. Your friend feels tired.
8. Your friend says that you shouldn't stop smoking.
9. Your friend asks your advice about what he would do on the holiday to help other people.
10. Your wants to spend his holiday in a coastal town. Give him advice.

2-Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1-A: Show me the names of customers who phoned. B: Here they are.
A: O.K. Type this letter and send it now. B: O.K sir.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

2- A: I would like to read a book about the 6th October war.
B: you can find it on the third shelf, on the right.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3- A: How would you like to pay for it, sir? B: By credit card.
A: Well .Shall I put it in a bag for you? B: Yes, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

4- A: Where to?
B: The airport, please. Terminal 2 .Could you hurry up, please? My Plane leaves in half an hour.
A: I will do my best, but as you see the traffic is very heavy today.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

5- A: I'd like to know what is on today. B: It's an action film
A: When does the last performance start? B: At 12 p.m.
A: OK. Book me a seat, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

6 - A: Please fasten your seat belt, sir. B: OK. Can I have a drink, please?
A: Sorry, sir. You'll have to wait until we take off.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1) Today, our subject is the ... of English crime Fiction, Agatha Christie.
A-king **b- princess** **c- prince** **d- queen**

01000453264 01287277089

2) Agatha Miller was … in 1890 and was the youngest of three children.

a-borne b-born c-bearing d- bored

3) She was a **………..** child who was very **close to** her family.

a- ashamed b-shameful c- shyly d-shy

4) During the First World War she worked as a nurse, and while she was looking after ……….. soldiers.

A-wound b-wounded c- wounding d- windy

5) Agatha Christie was deeply …….. by the death of her mother.

a- effected b- affect c- affected d-effective

6) She could remember nothing about the week and is thought to have suffered from…….

a- amnesty b-amnesia c-sensei d- amnesic

7) She became very interested in archaeology and worked with her husband on ……………….

a- excavate b-excavators c-exclave d-excavations

8) Some of her books are ………… on her travels to these countries

a- base c- basis c- basic d- based

9) Many of works were …………… films or theatre plays.

a- turned out b- turned into c- turned on d- turned off

10) Her most famous play is The Mousetrap, which was first **……** in 1952.

a- made b- done c- performed d- carried

11) The play has been performed without **…………** and is the longest-running play in the world.

a- run b- running c- to run d- ran

12) Agatha Christie died ………………85, in 1976.

a- aged b- aging c- age d- old

S.B Exercise

13-The government knows that the enemy is being helped by a dangerous group of ……… inside the country.

a-spies b- activators c- facilitators d-helpers

14- It is believed that the spies' headquarters is a small hotel on the coast.

d- beach a- coast b- bank c- shore

15-The guests ………… Mr. Bletchley, a retired soldier; Mrs. Sprot, a shy young woman; and Carl von Denim, a scientist.

a- consists b- include c- contain d- enclose

16-Mr. Bletchley introduces Tommy to Mr. Haydock, a retired sailor who lives in a house ……………………….the sea.

a- overlooking b- overlooks c- looking up d- looking on

17- The police discovered that the ……………. are innocent.

a- suspicions b- suspects c- suspected d- sessions

18- The invasion is planned for the following week. ,so they have seven days to find the enemy and save the country from it.

a- invade b- invasion c- invader d- envision

19- The police find a radio ………hidden in his bathroom ,so he is one of the spies.

a-transmitter b-transporter c- translator d- transplanted

20- …….. the way back to his hotel, he's captured and locked in a room.

a- in b- at c- on d-by

21- To everyone's …………, the shy Mrs. Sprot is the other spy leader.

a- surprising b- surprised c- surprisingly d-surprise

W.B Exercise

175. …………… means not being able to remember or a medical condition that makes you forget things .

a- Amnesiac b- Amnesic c- Amnesty d- Amnesia

176. …………is digging up the ground to find things from the past.

a- Excavation **b- Execute** **c- Exclusion** **d- Exclude**

177. ....is the crime of killing someone.

a- Murderer **b- Murderous** **c- Murder** **d- Murderess**

178. A substance that may kill or harm you if you eat/drink it is called.......

a- poison **b- poisonous** **c- poisoning** **d- poisoned**

179. ....means nervous and embarrassed about talking to people.

a- shyness **b- shyly** **c- shy** **d- shelly**

180. Equipment used to catch mice is called.....................

a- mouse mat **b- mousetrap** **c- mouse tail** **d- mouse fighter**

181. Many children are ....about talking to their teacher when they first go to school.

a- ashamed **b- shy** **c- timid** **d- coward**

182. All the fish in the river died , someone must have put -------in water.

a- poison **b- salt** **c- sugar** **d- saline**

183. A man has been found dead in the road, the police think it was not an accident , it was ---- -------------..

a- a murderer **b- a murder** **c- an event** **d- a criminal**

184. He banged his head and is now suffering from ....

a- antheastic **b- supremacy** **c- amnesty** **d- amnesia**

185. After seeing the mouse , they decided to put a ------- in the kitchen..

a- mouse mat **b- mouse pad** **c- mouse trap** **d- mouse rat**

186. A person who finds out information about another country or organisation.

a- spy **b- skater** **c- seer** **d- srayer**

187. The place from which a company or action is controlled is a..............

a- headset **b- headquarters** **c- headdress** **d- head**

188. Someone you find hasn't done a crime is ....

a- guilty **b- innocent** **c- innocence** **d- suspect**

189. Police are looking for someone who stole a car yesterday .The main ....is a man in his forties.

a- suspect **b- suspicion** **c- suspire** **d- criminal**

190. They are using a very powerful ......to send signals to the astronauts.

a- transporter **b- transplanted** **c- transmitter** **d- transmit**

191. Working as a ....in a foreign country can be a very dangerous job.

a- diplomat **b- customer** **c- client** **d- spy**

192. In many countries , people have to carry an ....card to prove who they are.

a- identity **b- identify** **c- identifying** **d- identifiably**

193. In Britain in 1940s , people were afraid of an ....by the enemy.

a- invade **b- invasion** **c- conquer** **d- raid**

194. The Romans ....Britain in 43 BC.

a- invaded **b- invasion** **c- raid** **d- attack**

195. We saw a lot of photos, but we couldn't ....the man we'd met.

a- identity **b- identical** **c- identify** **d- know**

196. How did the man prove his ....?

a- innocent **b- innocence** **c- freedom** **d- guilty**

197. The enemy used radios to ....messages to their ships.

a- transplant **b- transport** **c- transfer** **d- transpire**

198. They ....that the driver had been going very fast at the time of the accident.

a- satire **b- suspire** **c- suspicion** **d- suspect**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1-All the hostages were finally split free

2 -Finding the spies will help to save the country from indication.

3-Excavation means to dig up the ground to find things from the present.

4-He consisted milk and butter on his shopping list.

01000453264 01287277089

5-He fell in the river but his friend deceived him from drowning.
6 -He is ashamed he is always nervous and embarrassed.
7-He travelled by his brothers' car.
8-He was set free after being proved that he was guilty.
9-Her stories were made to films.
10-I remember to visit the pyramids when I was 10.
11-1In the way back to his hotel, he was arrested by the police.
12-Insomnia means having no ability to remember.
13-Murder is the crime of hurting people.
14-She died aging 80.
15-She lives in a big house over locking the sea.
16-She was the younger of three children..
17-She was too spy to ask anyone for help.
18-Since tiring from the company, she has done voluntary work for a charity.
19-Some of the books are basing on her travels.
20-The government employed two secret accountants to get information about other countries.
21-The police are trying to discover the density of a baby found by the side of a road.
22-The price contains breakfast and accommodation.
23-The room was 3 metres width.
24-The site has been executed by archaeologists.
25-This new evidence will prove the old man's innocent.

Translate into Arabic:

1-Some of the most important aims of education are to build the Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and create a productive society .Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists able to stand up the monopoly of science and technology by some countries .

2-Agatha Christie is the best-selling author of all time. She has sold over two billion books worldwide and has been translated into over 45 languages. She also wrote over a dozen plays, including The Mousetrap, which is now the longest running play in theatrical history.

3-A wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems. This leads to the welfare of both the individual and the society.

7-Translate into English:

1- لا تقاس حياة المرء بالسنين التي عاشها و لكن بالخبرات التي اكتسبها.
2- تمكنت السلطات من القبض علي الجاسوس بعدما عثروا علي جهاز الارسال في غرفة نومه.

Language Focus

Passive Verbs: Past & Present

الأفعال فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول: الماضى و المضارع

الاستخدام:

نستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول عندما لا نعرف من قام بالحدث.✍

- My car **was stolen** last night. (هنا لا نعرف من قام بالحدث)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما لا نهتم بمن قام بالفعل.✍

- This hotel **was built** in 1997.
- Nabil **has been invited** to a birthday party.

(فى هذه الجملة نهتم بالفندق و نبيل و لا نهتم بمن شيد الفندق أو بمن دعا نبيل)

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما لا نريد أن نقول من قام بالفعل.✍

- A mistake **was made**.

خطوات تحويل الجملة من مبنى للمعلوم إلى مبنى للمجهول:

01000453264 01287277089

Ahmed Saeed

1- المفعول به يصير فاعلا أول الجملة.
2- نستخدم verb to be في نفس زمن الفعل الأصلى.
3- نستخدم كلمة by .
4- الفاعل يصير مفعولا به بعد كلمة by.

Tense	Active	Passive
Present simple **مضارع بسيط**	مصدر / مصدر + s / es People **speak** Arabic in Egypt.	am / is / are+ pp Arabic **is spoken** in Egypt.
Present continuous **مضارع مستمر**	am / is / are + v. + ing The mechanic **is repairing** my car.	am / is / are + being + pp My car **is being repaired**.
Past simple **ماضى بسيط**	التصريف الثانى للفعل Ali **invited** me to the party.	was / were + pp I **was invited** to the party.
Past continuous **ماضى مستمر**	was / were + v. + ing I thought someone **was watching** me.	was / were + being + pp I thought I **was being watched**.
Present perfect **مضارع تام**	has / have + pp I **have paid** the bill.	has / have + been + pp The bill **has been paid**.
Past perfect **ماضى تام**	had + pp I knew why they **had picked** me for the team.	had + been + pp I knew why I **had been picked** for the team.
Future simple **مستقبل بسيط**	will / shall + مصدر They **will buy** a car.	will / shall + be + pp A car **will be bought**.
Future perfect	will / shall + have + pp He **will have bought** the money.	will / shall + have + been + pp The money **will have been spent**.
Simple modals **أفعال ناقصة بسيطة** will-shall-can-would-should-could-may-might-must-has to-have to-had to-will have to-needn't-ought to-used to-going to	فعل ناقص + مصدر We **may find** more oil. Who **are** you **going to invite**?	فعل ناقص + be + pp More **oil may be found**. Who **is going to be invited**?
Perfect modals **أفعال ناقصة تامة**	فعل ناقص + have + pp He **should have paid** the bill.	فعل ناقص + have + been + pp The bill **should have been paid**.

في اللغة الرسمية من الشائع أن نبدأ الجملة بأحدى هاتين الصيغتين مع هذه الأفعال: ✍

It + v. to be + pp من الفعل الأول + that + باقى الجملة
فاعل الجملة الثانية + v. to be + pp + to + مصدر الفعل الثانى فى الجملة (فى المضارع و المستقبل) فاعل الجملة الثانية + v. to be + pp + to + have + pp (من الفعل الثانى) (فى حالة الماضى و الأزمنة التامة)

و الأفعال الأكثر استخداما هى I know / we believe و ذلك بدلا من اللغة الغير رسمية مثل
Know / believe / fear / say / think / predict / agree / hope

Active	Passive

Journalists **report** that food prices **increased** by 10 % last year.	It **is reported** that food prices increased by 10 % last year. Food prices **are reported to have increased** by 10 % last year.
We **believe** that he **has recovered** from his illness.	It **is believed** that he has recovered from his illness. He **is believed to have recovered** from his illness.
We **know** that the accident **happened** at 3 o'clock in the morning.	It **is known** that the accident happened at 3 o'clock in the morning. The accident **is known to have happened** at 3 o'clock in the morning.
Doctors **say** that smoking **is** bad for health.	It **is said** that smoking is bad for health. Smoking **is said to be** bad for health.

ملاحظات:

✍ إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ don't / doesn't نستخدم am not / is not / aren't + p.p. أما اذا كانت منفية بـ didn't نستخدم wasn't / weren't + p.p.

Active	Passive
The police **don't allow** big cars into the city centre.	Big cars **aren't allowed** into the city centre.
Mr David **doesn't allow** smoking in his office.	Smoking **isn't allowed** in Mr David's office.
Tom **didn't answer** the exam.	The exam **wasn't answered** by Tom.

✍ إذا كانت الجملة تبدأ بـ Nobody / No one نحول ever إلى never إن وجدت. و فى حالة عدم وجودها ننفى بـ not

Active	Passive
Nobody has ever beaten me at chess.	I **have never been beaten** at chess.
No one must ever break the law.	The law **must never be broken**.

✍ إذا كانت الجملة تحتوى على مفعولين يمكن أن نبدأ بالمفعول الأول أو الثانى. و اذا بدأن بـالمفعول الثانى نستخدم حرف الجر to / for قبل المفعول الأول

الأفعال التى تأخذ حرف الجر to هى:

give يعطى / offer يقدم / pass يمرر / write يكتب / sell يبيع / bring يحضر / show يبين / lend يسلف / read يقرأ / hand يسلم / deliver يوصل / tell يخبر / owe يدين / pay يدفع

الأفعال التى تأخذ حرف الجر for هى:

fetch يحضر / build يبنى / get يحصل على / find يجد / buy يشترى / save يوفر / leave يترك keep يحتفظ بـ / call يدعو / cut يقطع / make يعمل / book يحجز

active	Passive
He **gave** me a nice camera.	I **was given** a nice camera. A nice camera **was given** to me.
He **bought** me a mobile.	I was bought a mobile. A mobile was bought for me.

✍ عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف verb to be بدلا من get يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

catch يقبض على / arrest يقبض على / damage يدمر / destroy يدمر / kill يقتل marry يتزوج/ burn يحرق / beat يهزم

01000453264 01287277089

Active	The police **caught** the bank robbers.
Passive	The bank robbers **got caught**.

يليها مفعول ثم مصدر و عند التحويل إلى مبنى للمجهول نستخدم make/see/hear/watch الأفعال آلاتية ✍
to.قبل المصدر   allowed to يتحول الى let أما الفعل

Active	Passive
He **saw** them **go** out.	They **were seen to go** out
He **let me** go.	I **was allowed to** go.

يوضع قبل التصريف الثالث. adv. فى حالة وجود ✍

Active	You must plan your **work carefully**.
Passive	Your work must be **carefully planned**.

(عند التحويل إلى   مبنى للمجهول..(to be + p.p نستخدم (to + inf.) فى حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (✍

Active	I want you to tell me the truth. (be)
Passive	**I want to be told** the truth.

(فى المبنى للمجهول..(being + p.p نستخدم(v.+ ing فى حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (✍

Active	I **hate** people **telling** me lies.
Passive	I **hate being told** lies.

. و الضمائر المنعكسة p.p ثم be نستخدم ضمير منعكس ثم let إذا كان الفاعل و المفعول واحد مع الفعل ✍
هى:

myself / himself / herself / itself / ourselves / themselves / yourself / yourselves

Active	He **doesn't let** others **laugh** at him.
Passive	He **doesn't let himself be laughed** at.

<u>**خطوات تحويل الجملة من مبنى للمجهول إلى مبنى للمعلوم:**</u>

1- و نبدأ بما يليها و اذا لم توجد نبدأ بفاعل مناسب.byنحذف
2- المحذوف.v. to be و نضع الفعل فى نفس زمن v. to beنحذف
3- الفاعل يصبح مفعولا بعد الفعل.

Active	Passive
English **is spoken** in many countries in Africa.	People **speak** English in many countries in Africa.
The metro **is being extended**.	Engineers **are extending** the metro.
The house **has been painted**.	We **have painted** the house.
A letter was written by Rania.	Rania wrote a letter.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1- Your friend asks your advice about what he would do on the holiday to help other people.
2- Your wants to spend his holiday in a coastal town. Give him advice.
3- You ask your friend about the best way to study English.
4- Your father advises you to sleep early to keep fit.

S.B

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

90. Agatha ....at home by her mother.
a- was taught **b- is taught** **c- is being taught** **d- taught**
91. She is thought ....suffered from amnesia.
a- to **b- to be** **c- to have** **d- having**
92. It .....that she cleaned and repaired some of the things that were found..
a- thinking **c- thought**

b- was thinking **d- was thought**

93. Some of her stories ....on her travels to these countries.

a- be based **b- base** **c- are based** **d- have based**

The play ....performed without a break.

a-'d performed **b- have been performed** **c- has been performed** **d-performed**

94. Her best books ....in over a hundred years.

a- was published **b- have been published** **c- published** **d- publish**

95. The mousetrap ....in 1947 by Agatha Christie.

a- was written **b- is written** **c- wrote** **d- was writing**

96. It was written as a radio play ...... *Three Blind Mice.*

a- is called **b- calling** **c- was called** **d- called**

97. The same characters ....for the first eleven years .

a- played **b- were playing** **c- were played** **d- play**

98. Since then the actors .... many times.

a- changed **b- have been changed** **c- have changed** **d- were changed**

99. It is now known that last month was ....for two years.

a- hot **b- hotter** **c- the hotter** **d- the hottest**

100. Egypt is believed to ....the best tourist attractions .

a- has **b- have** **c- having** **d- be having**

101. It has been reported that foreign tourism ....by 20% last year.

a- is increasing **b- has increased** **c- increase** **d- increased**

W.B

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

102. The Mousetrap ....as a radio play in 1947.

a- is written **b- was written** **c- has written** **d- has been written**

103. Agatha Christie's books ....more than 40 languages.

a- had translated **b- were translated** **c- translated** **d- translate**

104. 2008 Olympic Games ...by millions of people all over the world.

a- are watched **b- have been watched** **c- were watched** **d- has been watched**

105. Petra ....by the Romans in 106 AD.

a- has been captured **b- was captured** **c- captured** **d- was being captured**

106. The Eiffel Tower ....by Gustave Eiffel in 1889.

a- have been designed **b- was designed** **c- had designed** **d- have designed**

The Cairo Metro is used to ....about 10 million passengers every day.

a- be carrying **b- was carrying** **c- carrying** **d- carry**

107. Many of Agatha Christie's stories ....into films .

a-'ve been made **b-had made** **c-were making** **d-made**

108. This year's prize for crime fiction ....by a 78-year-old man.

a – was won **b-has been won** **c-was winning** **d-will be won**

109. The last World Cup Final ......on TV by three hundred million people.

a- saw **b-is seen** **c-was seen** **d-will be seen**

110. English and Arabic ....in most tourist offices.

a – speak **b-spoken** **c-is spoken** **d-are spoken**

111. One of the classroom windows.................

a- were broken **b-broken** **c-has been broken** **d-are broken**

112. A famous tennis player is believed ....after a city centre road accident.

a- **to hurt** **b-to be hurt** **c-to have hurt** **d-hurt**

113. It is now known that Egypt ....by increasing numbers of tourists last year.

a- **visited** **b-was visited** **c-is visited** **d-has been visited**

114. it is believed that languages ....to younger children at schools.

a –taught **b-are teaching** **c-is taught** **d-are taught**

115. It ......that archaeologists have found a new pyramid at Saqqara

a – reports **b-reported** **c-was reporting** **d- has been reported**

More Exercises

116. He is ---------------- to have suffered from amnesia.

a – think **b – thinking** **c – to think** **d – thought**

117. A famous tennis player ------------- to be hurt in the accident.

a – is believed **b – are believed** **c – is believing** **d – are believing**

118. Money ---------to bring happiness.

a – thought **b – will think** **c – has thought** **d – is thought**

119. It was reported ----------- cancelled.

a – that the match **b – that the match was** **c – to have** **d – have been**

120. They are expected -------------- the cup.

a – to have won **b – that they will win** **c – to win** **d – to have been won**

121. My son ------------------ to get full marks.

a – believes **b – believed** **c – is believing** **d – is believed**

122. It -----------that money is very important.

a – can't deny **b – can't have denied** **c – denied** **d – can't be denied**

123. We don't know where he lives . ------------ believed to live in Tanta.

a – It is **b – It was** **c – He is** **d – He has**

124. He --------- to be one of the most intelligent pupils.

a – considers **b – is considered** **c – has considered** **d – is considering**

125. ------------ is known that smoking is harmful to health.

a – Everyone **b – It** **c – No one** **d – He**

126. It has ----------- reported that he the criminal.

a – be **b – been** **c – being** **d – is**

127. -------- thought that he will take part in the race.

a – It is **b – It has** **c – He is** **d - He was**

128. It was -------------that he killed the old woman.

a – suppose **b – supposing** **c – supposes** **d – supposed**

129. It is reported --------- she cleaned her room.

a – to **b – that** **c – be** **d – been**

5-Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

1-A 78-year old man has been won this year's prize for crime fiction.
2-A famous tennis player is believed to be hurting after a city centre road accident.
3-A new pyramid at Saqqara has found by archaeologists.
4-A terrible thing was happened yesterday.
5-He is said too be a thief.
6-He is thought to have making a plan.
7-Her best books have published in over a hundred countries.
8-It believes that the terrorists escaped.
9-It has been reporting that foreign tourism increased by 20% last year.
10-It has known that smoking causes serious diseases.
11-It is been reported that he took the money.
12-It is believed that young children can be teaching languages at school.
13-It is fear that there are no survivors of the crash.
14-It is know that he can help us.
15-It is now being known that last month was the hottest for two years.
16-It said that the Wall of China is the greatest building on Earth.
17-It thought that he is making a plan.
18-It was believed that he stole the bank.
19-It was reported that the team to lose the game.
20-Many of Agatha Christie's stories have made into films and TV programmes.
21-Nobody saw near the crime scene.
22-She is believed to have steal the documents

01000453264 01287277089

23-She was believed to have steal the car.
24-2She was teaching at home by her mother.
25-Since then, the actors have been changing several times.
26-Since then, the play performs without a break.
27-2The crime has solved.
28-The night will spend in a hotel because of heavy snow.
29-The same characters were playing by the same actors.
30-The story is about a group of people who are not knowing to each other.

6- Translate into Arabic:

Some of the most important aims of education are to build the Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and create a productive society .Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists able to stand up the monopoly of science and technology by some countries **.**

7- Translate into English:

1- تنشأ الاصابة بانفلونزا الخنازير من الاتصال المباشر مع الخنازير المصابة
2- يعتمد النجاح فى الحياة على الصبر والعمل الجاد

Language Functions

Asking for advice	Giving advice
What do you think I should do to ..... ?	I think you should ....
Can I ask your advice about .... ?	Why don't you .... ?
Can you give me some advice about .....?	If I were you, I'd ....
What do you think about + v. + ing?	I think it'd be a good idea to ....
What do you think I ought to do about ...?	What about ....?
I want to ask your advice about	The best thing you could do would be to ..

Respond to each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks for your advice about what to do after finishing school. Advise him.
2- You ask your teacher's advice about organising your work.
3- You advise your friend his who is riding his bicycle between cars.
4- You advise your brother who always plays in the street.
5- Your friend gets poor marks. You give him some advice.

Test on Unit 5

1- Respond to the following situations:

1-A friend asks for your advice about keeping fit. Advise him.
2-You want some advice from a friend about how you can eat more healthily. What do you ask?
3-A friend wants to meet new people, but he/she is very shy. Make a recommendation.
4-Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.

2-Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are: (June, 2007)

1-A: I'd like to know what is on today.
B: It's an action film
A: When does the last performance start?
B: At 12 p.m.
A: OK. Book me a seat, please
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................ - Function: ....

2-A: Please fasten your seat belt, sir.
B: OK. Can I have a drink, please?

01000453264 01287277089

A: Sorry, sir. You'll have to wait until we take off.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B................ - Function: ....

3- Choose the correct answer:

1.Many children are (ashamed – shy – afraid – hungry) about talking to their teacher when they first go to school.
2.All the fish in the river have died. Someone must have put (poisoning – poisonous – poison – pension) in the water.
3-A man has been found dead in the road. The police think it was an accident, not a (chance – murder – incident – joke).
4-He banged his head and is now suffering from (memory – amnesia – amnesty – anemia).
5-After they saw the mouse, they decided to put a (mousetrap – moustache – mouthwash – mouse mat) in the kitchen.
6-Archaeologists are planning a new (extension – explanation – expansion – excavation) in the south of the country.
7-Police are looking for someone who stole a car yesterday. The main (suspense – suspicion – suspect – crime) is a man in his forties.
8-They are using a very powerful (meter – informer – transport – transmitter) to send signals to the astronauts.
9-The Mousetrap (wrote – was written – has been written – is written) as a radio play in 1947.
10-Naguib Mahfouz's books (have translated – translated – was translated – have been translated) into many languages.
11-Millions of people all over the world (watch – have watched – watched – are watching) the 2008 Olympic Games .
12-English (speaks – has spoken – is spoken – speaking) in many countries all over the world.
13-It is now (to know – known – has known – being known) that Egypt was visited by increasing numbers of tourists last year.
14-While his hair (has been cut – had been cut – was cutting – was being cut), he read an article in a magazine.
15-The road (will repair – has repaired – will be repaired – has to repair) next month.
16-The man (didn't release – wasn't released – hasn't been released – won't be released) until the police had questioned him.

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1.He was inspected of having done the crime.
2.He has nothing to do with the crime. He is certainly guilty.
3.The little girl was too spy to speak to the stranger.
4.The Eiffel Tower design by Gustave Eiffel in 1889.
5.About two million passengers are used the Cairo metro every day.
6.The last World Cup Final saw on TV by three hundred million people.

5- Read the following passage then answer the questions: (June, 2007)

When people are playing a game, they need to follow the rules. If they don't, the game becomes disorganised and unfair. If a student ignores a rule against talking in class, the other students can't concentrate. Drivers who don't follow traffic laws can cause serious accidents.
Most things we do are governed by rules. These may be unwritten, like the "rules" of social politeness, or official laws passed by parliament and backed up by the legal system. But all rules and laws have the same purpose - to make it clear what is right

or wrong, and what happens if someone breaks the rule. They are designed to ensure fairness, safety and respect for other people's rights, And in this' way they help us work, play and live together peacefully.
If there were no rules and everyone was free to do whatever they wanted, most people would probably behave selfishly. We need rules to help us get along together and show respect for each other.
Most of us are basically honest, and knowing the rules means that we usually try to follow them. One reason we do this is to avoid punishment, but the strongest argument for following the rules is - quite simply - that it makes the world a better place for all of us.

A. Answer the following questions

1- What is the common purpose of all rules and laws?
2- What are the types of rules and laws mentioned in the passage?
3- In one sentence (of your own), give your opinion about those who break the rules, and say why.

B. Choose the correct answer:

4- In class, a student should not --------------- the rules.
a) ignore b) govern c) control d) follow
5- Following the rules means that -------------------.
a) we get punished b) we avoid punishment
c) we cause accidents d) we behave selfishly

6- Read the following passage and answer the questions:

The name Leonardo da Vinci makes people think of the Mona Lisa. But Leonardo da Vinci was not only a great painter. He was also a scientist, a musician, an inventor and an engineer. And he was a genius in everything he did.
Leonardo believed in learning by seeing. He looked carefully at everything around him - people, plants, animals and things. He took his notebook with him everywhere and drew what he saw. He drew so he could learn about how things worked.
Leonardo left 13,000 pages of drawings. He especially liked to study and draw machines. As he drew them, he thought of new things that could be done with them. For example, he thought of a car 400 years before cars were invented! He also tried to invent a flying machine.
Leonardo da Vinci didn't want people to read his notes and steal his ideas, so he wrote his notes backwards. To read them you must hold them up to a mirror.

A) Answer the following questions:

1-According to Leonardo da Vinci, what is the best way of learning?
2-What did Leonardo do to learn about how things worked?
3-Find in the passage words which mean: a) a person who has great ability or skill
b) opposite to the usual direction

B) Choose the correct answer:

4- Leonardo da Vinci's drawings of machines helped others to invent -------------------.
a) bicycles and cars b) cars and vacuum cleaners
c) planes and washing machines d) cars and planes
5- To stop others stealing his ideas, Leonardo wrote his notes -----------------.
a) upwards b) downwards towards d)backwards

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (August, 2008)
A day trip or a school outing that you enjoy

01000453264 01287277089

A wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems. This leads to the welfare of both the individual and the society.

B)Translate into English:

1-من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية ولكن يجب أن تحترم الآخرين.
2-نقص الغذاء يهدد حياة الملايين من البشر في كل أنحاء العالم..

Unit 6: The Importance of Trees



Tape script



Presenter: in today's Natural World, Professor Jeremy Beech is going to answer listeners ' questions about trees. Welcome to the

01000453264

Programme.
Professor Beech: hello.
Presenter**:** can we have both first question,
Please?
Female caller: hello. I'd like to ask the
Professor about the **tallest tree** in the world. Where is it and how tall is it?
Professor Beech: the tallest tree in the world is a giant Sequoia and it's in California. It's 83.8 meters **tall**. Scientists say it is between 2300 and 2700 years old.
Presenter: That's incredible! Now, let's move on to our second caller.
Boy caller: Hello. I know a tree's leaves help it to **take in** light from the sun. But I'd like to ask what the **bark** of a tree does.
Professor Beech: Well, the bark is like our skin - it protects the living part of the tree on top of the and the tubes which carry water from a tree's roots to its leaves. If the bark is **badly damaged**, the tree dies. Animals such as goats, love eating bark, so it's especially important to keep animals away from young trees.
Presenter: Thank you. What's the next question?
Male caller: hi. I'd like to ask: how is it possible to calculate the age of a tree **by counting** its rings, without cutting the tree down?
Presenter: Good question. Perhaps you could start by explaining what the rings are that this caller is referring to.
Professor Beech: Well, most trees grow bigger every year. Just under the bark, that is a circle of soft cells which hardens every spring or summer. This forms a ring of new wood each year. This means we can calculate the age of the tree by counting rings.
Presenter: You can see the rings if you cut the tree down. But how do you do this without killing the tree?
Professor Beech: We can **drill into** the tree to make a deep, narrow hole. We then extract a very thin piece of wood which **does no damage** to the tree.
Presenter: And are the rings the same width every year?
Professor Beech: No, they aren't. The width **depends on** the climate and the amount of rain. If there's a lot of rain during the year, the rings are quite wide. If it's a dry year, the rings are narrower. In this way, we can **find out** what the weather was like hundreds of years ago when the tree was younger.
Presenter: Really? Well, I'm afraid that's all we have time for in today's programme. Thanks to everyone. pleasure.

Reading	Why do we need trees?	

If you ask people why we need trees, most of them will answer: "we need wood from tees for building houses"; "we get fruit and nuts from trees"; "we **make** paper **out of** wood from trees"; "we can use wood as a fuel for cooking and heating". Recently, people have added a more serious reason to this list: "Trees help the earth to breathe" or "they protect us from global warming". It has been said that more than 5000 things in everyday use are made from trees. Here are a few of them: furniture, sports equipment, pencils, magazines and newspapers, cardboard boxes, musical instruments and believe it or not- some kinds of toothpaste. In addition to these uses, trees also give us valuable chemicals.
Turpentine, which is used as **paint remover**, is **made from** the **sap** of trees. Sap can also be used to make rubber. If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of
plastic. Wood products can also be **turned into** paper, cardboard and materials from which clothes can be made. You may be **surprised to** hear that wood products are also used in some types of ice cream and other

foods. So, the next time you are reading a newspaper, eating an ice cream, playing the piano or cleaning your teeth, just stop and think: how would you manage to do these things if there were no trees?

Research : How to make paper

The process for making paper was invented in China in the second century A.D., and all paper was made one sheet at a time until 1798. The first step in making paper is to find the raw material, tree bark or wood. The workers will cut the bark / wood into finer strips and pieces and then ground it up to prepare it for the cooking stage. The bark is added to water and boiled until the mixture becomes a homogeneous thick paste-like liquid. After the mixture is cooked, it is ready to be made into paper. The cooked mixture is poured into the screen. The mixture is stirred with the fingers to distribute the concentrated mixture. After a few minutes the screen can be supported in the sun to dry. In a few hours, the paper is dry.

Key Vocabulary

bark	اللحاء	products	منتجات
harden	يجعله صلبا	rubber	مطاط
ring	حلقة	sap	عصارة
tube	أنبوب	toothpaste	معجون أسنان
cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون	turpentine	زيت يستخرج من شجر الصنوبر
instrument	أداة	calculate	يحسب
extract	يستخرج / يستخلص	width	عرض / اتساع

Vocabulary

cooking utensils	أدوات الطهى	thin	رقيق / رفيع
fence	سور	remove	يزيل
shed	سقيفة	shelter	مأوى / ملجأ
firm	صلب / حازم / شركة	farms	مزارع
stiff	جامد / صلب	heating	التدفئة
object	شئ	trunk	الجذع
pipe	أنبوبة	label	
natural world	العالم الطبيعى	violin	كمان
sequoia	شجر طويل ينمو فى كاليفورنيا	musical sounds	أصوات موسيقية
leaves	أوراق	freeze	يتجمد
protect	يحمى	flood	يفيض / فيضان
roots	جذور	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
seeds	بذور	irrigate	يروى
goats	الماعز	pick	يقطف
calculate	يحسب	pink	وردى
count	يعد	melt	يذوب
caller	المتصل تليفونيا	breathe	يتنفس
circle	دائرة	car tyre	اطار السيارة
form	يكون / يشكل	nuts	الجوز
cells	خلايا	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
soft	ناعم / أملس	plastic	بلاستيك
damage	يدمر / دمار	furniture	الأثاث
branch	فرع	flat	مسطح
fruit	ثمرة / ثمار	palm tree	نخلة

regulations	نظم	dig	يحفر
dates	بلح	soil	تربة
coconuts	جوز الهند	fertilisers	أسمدة
palm oil	زيت النخيل	stick	عصا
rot	يتعفن	recharge	يعيد شحن
container	وعاء / اناء	brush	فرشاه
fuel	وقود	alternatives	بدائل

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

provide ...... with	يزود / يمد ...... بـ	connected with	مرتبط بـ
take in	يمتص / يفهم / يخدع	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
keep away from	يبتعد عن	in addition to	بالاضافة الى
keep ... away from	يبعد ...... عن	make a list	يعد قائمة
cut trees down	يقطع الأشجار	good for	مفيد لـ
refer to	يشير الى	loaded up with	محمل بـ
drill into	يحفر فى	give out	يخرج / يطلق
do damage to	يسبب ضرر لـ	set rules	يحدد القواعد
depend on	يعتمد على	Break the rules	يخالف القواعد
turn to	يتحول الى	give instructions	يعطى تعليمات
go on	يستمر فى	carry out instructions	ينفذ التعليمات
grow on trees	ينمو على الأشجار	a set of instructions	مجموعة تعليمات
carry from ... to	ينقل من ... الى	tie ...... to	يربط ... بـ
get better at	يتحسن فى	make sure	يتأكد
leave out	يستبعد	make ... out of	يصنع ...... من
fall over	يسقط	along the side of the street	على جانب الشارع

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word الكلمة		Antonym العكس	
narrow	ضيق	wide	واسع / عريض
soft	ناعم / أملس	hard	صلب
dry	جاف	wet	مبلل
freeze	يتجمد	melt	يذوب
valuable	قيم	valueless	بلا قيمة
advantages	مميزات	disadvantages	عيوب
deep	عميق	shallow	ضحل
sweet	حلو	bitter	مر
popular	شعبى / محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبى / غير محبوب

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل		Noun اسم		Adjective صفة	
harden	يجعل صلبا	hardness	صلابة	hard	صلب
widen	يوسع	width	اتساع / عرض	wide	واسع / عريض
strengthen	يقوى	strength	قوة	strong	قوى
shorten	يقصر	shortness	قصر	short	قصير
sharpen	يبرى القلم	sharpness	حدة	sharp	حاد
lengthen	يطول	length	طول	long	طويل
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق

01000453264 01287277089

Noun phrases عبارات اسمية

cardboard box	صندوق من الكرتون	paint remover	مزيل الطلاء
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	sports equipment	أجهزة رياضية
ice cream	ايس كريم	robber gloves	قفاز من المطاط
musical instrument	الة موسيقية		

Definitions تعريفات

bark	the material that forms the surface of the wood of a tree
harden	to become firm or stiff.
ring	an object in the shape of a circle
tube	a pipe that liquids or gases go through.
calculate	to find out something or measure something by using numbers
extract	to remove something
width	the distance from one side of something to the other
cardboard	very stiff thick paper, used especially for making boxes
instrument	something such as a piano or violin used for producing musical sounds
products	things that are made or grown to be sold
rubber	A substance used for making tyres, boots, etc.
sap	the liquid that carries food through plants and trees
Toothpaste معجون أسنان	substance used for cleaning your teeth
Turpentine زيت يستخلص من شجر الصنوبر	a strong-smelling liquid used for removing paint

Confusable Words

climate	المناخ (حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية طويلة)
weather	الطقس (حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة)

Ex: We are retiring to the Maldives because we like a sunny **climate**.
What's the **weather** like this morning?

ground	أرض (خارج المنزل)
floor	أرضية (المنزل)
Soil	تربة (تلقى فيها البذور)

Ex: There is a great hole in the **ground** behind my house.
The glass fell off the table and scattered يتناثر on the **floor**.
Some plants grow in a muddy **soil**.

made of	مصنوع من (المادة المصنع منها الشئ لا تتغير و نراها)
made from	مصنوع من (المادة المصنع منها الشئ تتغير و لا نراها)
made in	مصنوع فى (سنة / مكان)
made by	مصنوع بواسطة (شخص أو دولة أو شركة)

Ex: She bought a bag **made of** leather.
Bread is **made from** flour.
This car was **made in** 2009.

01000453264 01287277089

This car was **made in** Italy.
This car was **made by** an Italian car company.

Language Notes

a piece of wood قطعة خشب	و يمكن a هى اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقه woodلاحظ أن كلمة a lot of / much / a piece of / someأن يسبق بـ

Ex: I need **some** wood.
I need **a piece of** wood.

without + v. + ing	بدون

Ex: He entered the house **without being** seen by anybody.

like + v. + ing يحب	would like + to + مصدر يريد

Ex: I **like playing** tennis.
I **would like to play** tennis tonight.

manage to + مصدر يتمكن من	Succeed in + v. + ing / اسم ينجح فى

Ex: He managed to cross the Nile.
He succeeded in crossing the Nile.
He succeeded in the driving test.

3 metres in height 5 inches in length 5 centimetres in depth	inلاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر
3 metres high 5 inches long 5 centimetres deep	وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة

help + مفعول + to + مصدر	يساعد فى
help + مفعول + مصدر	يساعد فى
help + مفعول + with + اسم	يساعد فى

Ex: My father **helped me to do** my homework.
My father **helped me do** my homework.
My father **helped me with my homework**.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

41. You are at an interview. You are asked about your marital status.
42. You are introduced to someone you have never met before.
43. You ask your friend about how to plant a tree.
44. You give your friend instructions about how to make tea the English way.
45. You give your instructions how to use the computer.
46. You tell your brother how to plant a tree.
47. You tell your friend about the best way to switch off the computer.
48. You want to make tea the English way. Ask your friend for advice.
49. Your friend asks how he can make tea.
50. Your friend asks you how to operate the computer.
51. Your friend asks you how to recharge a mobile.
52. Your sister ask for your advice about how to keep fit.

2-Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :
1-A: I'd like to renew my passport, please.
B: You need to fill in this form and bring two recent photos

01000453264 01287277089

Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

2-A: Can I book a flight to London, please? B: Sure. When would you like to travel?
A: Tomorrow morning.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

3- A) I'd like to change some money, please. B) Cash or Travellers' cheques?
A) Travellers' cheques B) That is fine .Sign the cheques and Show me your passport.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

4- A) Could you arrange us a trip to Luxor? B) Certainly .BY coach or by train. A) By train, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

5- A) Can I see your driving license, please? B) What for?
A) You have parked in a no-parking area.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

6- A) How can I help? B) Well, my car has been stolen. A) How?
B) I had parked it last night in front of my house In Ramses street .In the morning it wasn't there.
A) What make is it? B) BMW.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................ - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1) The tallest tree in the world is a giant Sequoia and 83.8 meters.......
a- tall **b-high** **c- long** **d- wide**
2) A tree's leaves help it to ......light from the sun.
a- take in **b- take out** **c- take off** **d- take to**
3) The ....is like our skin - it protects the living part of the tree on top of the Land.
A-Park **b- parking** **c- bark** **d- barking**
4) The tubes carry water from a tree's ....to its leaves.
a-rots **b-roots** **c-bark** **d- stem**
5) If the bark is .... damaged, the tree dies.
a-well **b- good** **c- badly** **d-worse**
6) Animals such as goats, love eating............, so it's especially important to keep animals away from young trees.
a-leaves **b-stem** **c-roots** **d- bark**
7) it is possible to calculate the age of a tree by counting its ...., without cutting the tree down.
a- rounds **b-circles** **c- rings** **d-barks**
8) The .... Of the ring depends on the climate and the amount of rain.
a- length **b-width** **c- weight** **d-thickness**
9) If it's a .... year, the rings are narrower.
a-**stormy** **b-rainy** **c-windy** **d-dry**

S.B Exercise

10)We make paper .... wood from trees.
a-of **b- into** **c- out of** **d- out**
11)We can use wood as a .... for cooking and heating.
a- oil **b- fuel** **c-fool** **d- full**
12)Trees help the earth to breathe and they .... us from global warming.
a- protect **b- prevent** **c-keep** **d-protective**
13)In addition to these uses, trees also give us .... chemicals.
a- valueless **b- value** **c-valuable** **d-valuate**

14)Turpentine, which is used as painted remover, is made from the .... of trees.

a- seed **b-sap** **c- sop** **d-soap**

15)Sap can also be used to make ....

a- robber **b-rubber** **c-razor** **d-robbery**

16)If wood is ...., chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic.

a- cooled **b- boiled** **c- vapourized** **d- heated**

17)Wood products can also be .... paper, cardboard and materials from which clothes can be made.

a- turned **b- turned into** **c-turned off** **d- turned out to**

18)Wood ...... are also used in some types of ice cream and other foods.

a-production **b- products** **c- produces** **d- producing**

19)the width of the ring depends on the ....

a- weather **b- climate** **c- water** **d- sun**

W.B Exercise

199. The ....are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.

a- roots **b- rots** **c- reeds** **d- leaves**

200. The hard outside part of a tree is called the ....

a- park **b- bark** **c- brake** **d- break**

201. ....are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.

a- loaves **b- seeds** **c- leaves** **d- fruits**

202. A......................grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside.

a- fruit **b- leaf** **c- bark** **d- branch**

203. Every year , trees grow extra ....of new wood.

a- root **b- ring** **c- seed** **d- bark**

204. The noun of "wide" is ....

a- widen **b- wider** **c- width** **d- widest**

205. "long" is an adjective ,but ....is the noun.

a- lung **b- longest** **c- longer** **d- length**

206. "high" is an adjective but ....is a noun.

a- height **b- highness** **c- highest** **d- hire**

207. "deep" is an adjective but ....is a noun.

a- depth **b- deepen** **c- deepest** **d- deepening**

208. Strong is an adjective but ....is a noun.

a- strength **b- strongest** **c- stronger** **d- stream**

209. Every year, the cells under the bark of a tree ....and become new wood.

a- hard **b- harder** **c- hardly** **d- harden**

210. This road is narrow for all today's traffic, so they are going to ......it.

a- wide **b- widen** **c- width** **d- wider**

211. That old bridge is very weak. They will have to................it soon

a- strong **b- strengthen** **c- strength** **d- strongen**

212. My new trousers are too long , so my mother is going to ....them.

a- shorten **b- shortage** **c- shorts** **d- short**

213. This knife doesn't cut very well. I need to ......it.

a- sharp **b- sharpness** **c- sharpen** **d- sharper**

214. That film is so popular that the queues to see it ....everyday.

a- long **b- length** **c- lengthen** **d- lengther**

215. ....is the liquid that carries food in trees .

a- sap **b- soap** **c- sob** **d- sop**

216. The............is a large wooden musical instrument with strings inside and black and white bars that produce sounds when you press them.

a- violet **b- guitar** **c- piano** **d- sax**

217. We use ....to remove paint.

a- corrector **b- gas** **c- Turpentine** **d- kerosene**

01000453264 01287277089

218. Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made of ………………

a- rubber	**b- plastic**	**c- synthetic**	**d- gum**

219. People put ………on their brush to clean their teeth.

a- tooth varnish	**b- nail varnish**	**c- tooth brush**	**d- toothpaste**

220. Coal, gas and oil are kinds of ………………. .

a- materials	**b- wood**	**c- furniture**	**d- fuel**

221. Beds, chairs and cupboards are ………………

a- materials	**b- wood**	**c- furniture**	**d- fuel**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1-Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made from rubber.
2-Goats and other animals can die trees by damaging the bark.
3-He is capable to reading and writing English..
4-It is possible to inculcate the age of a tree.
5-It is ten metres longly.
6-Park is the hard outside part of the tree.
7-Sap is used to making rubber.
8-Some poor countries suffer from food shortness.
9-The cells below the bark firm new wood every year.
10-The climate today is so cold. I can't go out.
11-The more air there is in a year, the wider the tree rings are.
12-The storm made a lot of damage.
13-The tallest tree is among two and three thousand years old.
14-The tree is 120 metres high.
15-The tree's leaves help it to take off light from the sun.
16-There are many things that are made of trees.
17-They can exact a very thin piece of wood.
18-This cream contains expands from several plants.
19-This road contacts Assiut with Fayoum.
20-Trees can protect us from local warming.
21-Trees help to increase pollution.
22-Tubes carry water from the bark to the leaves.
23-Turpentine is used as a paint mover.
24-We can make paper down of wood.
25-We need wood from trees for demolishing houses.
26-What do you refer for?
27-Wood can be used as a feel for cooking and heating.
-

6-Translate into Arabic:

1-Poverty and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets. Sooner or later, street children will turn to a life of crime. The whole society should help these children grow up to become good citizens.

2-Every year Egypt celebrates the international Child's Day in November .Prizes are given to children who successfully take part in the "Reading for All" competition. Creative children in the different branches oh knowledge are honoured.

3-Hospital patients have been shown to recover from surgery more quickly when their hospital room offered a view of trees. The strong ties between people and trees are most evident in the resistance of community residents to removing trees to widen streets.

1- ان قطع الغابات ذو اثر خطير علي البيئة.
2- تواجه البيئة مخاطر عديدة بسبب سوء استغلال للموارد الطبيعية.

Language Focus

The Zero Conditional

الحالة الصفرية

تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن المواقف التى تكون صحيحة دائما مثل قوانين الطبيعة و الفيزياء و الكيمياء و الفلك....... الخ.

If + present simple مضارع بسيط ⟶ present simple مضارع بسيط

- **If** plants **don't get** enough water, they **die**.
- **If** you water plants, they grow.
- You **read** more quickly **if** you **find** a book interesting.
- **If** you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

لاحظ انه يفضل استخدام المبنى للمجهول للتعبير عن الحقائق العلمية.

- **If** water **is heated** to 100° c, it **boils**.

The first conditional الحالة الأولى

If / Unless + present simple مضارع بسيط ⟶ will / shall + inf.

تعبر الحالة الأولى عن أحداث محتملة فى المستقبل.•

- **If** it **rains**, we**'ll get** wet.
- We**'ll see** the whole match **if** we **leave** now.
- **If** she **works** hard, she **will pass** the test.
- **Unless** he **works** hard, he **won't succeed**.

كما تعبر الحالة الأولى عن احتمال حقيقى فى المضارع.•

- **If** you**'re** hot, I**'ll buy** you a cool drink.

• يمكن استخدام can / may بدلا من will

- **If** we **have** enough time, we **can visit** Ahmed.

يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط أمر أو طلب.•

- **If** you **see** Asmaa, **give** her a message for me, please.

لاحظ صيغة السؤال مع if

- **What will you do** if you **win** a lot of money?

يمكن أن نستخدم should بدلا من if و يليها فاعل ثم مصدر

- **Should he have** enough money, he **will buy** a car.

Choose the correct answer:

1- If a tree (have-had-will have-has) deep roots, it won't fall over in strong winds.
2- If the bark of a tree is badly damaged, the tree (died-is dying-would die-dies).
3- If you (picked-will pick-had picked-pick) those apples now, they won't taste very sweet.
4- If water freezes, it (will turn-turns-would turn-turned) into ice.

01000453264 01287277089

5- If there (isn't-weren't-hadn't been-wasn't) any rain, fields get dry.
6- If the fields (gets-will get-had got-get) very dry this summer, I will irrigate them.
7- If we leave now, we (catch-will catch-would catch-might have caught) the train.
8- If it (is-was-are-had been) a dry year, the rings of the tree are narrower.
9- If it (has rained-will rain-had rained-rains), our plants will grow well.
10-If people (don't get-won't get-hadn't got-wouldn't get) enough food, they become ill.
11-If it rains for much longer, the river (will flood-is flooding-has flooded-flood).
12-If you heat ice, it (is melting-melted-melts-would melt).
13-If we (had-have-will have-could have) enough time, we'll visit Ahmed.
14- If it rains tomorrow, we (will stay-stayed-say-might stay) at home.
15-If she doesn't practise well, she (didn't-wouldn't-couldn't-won't play) the piano.
16-If you take this medicine, you (might-may-would-could) get better.
17-If you (didn't take-hadn't taken-wouldn't take-don't take) this medicine you won't get better.
18-If I (earned-earn-could earn-had earned) some money, I'll go abroad.
19-If you're hot, I (will buy-might buy-bought-would buy) you a cool drink.
20-If you heat water, it (will change-changed-changes-would change) into steam.

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write it correctly:

1- If it will rain, we will get wet.
2- If you leave now, you catch your train.
3- Water will freeze if the temperature is zero or below.
4- If you throw that stone, you break a window.
5- I get a headache if I use the computer for too long.
6- If she trains hard, she wins next week's race.
7- If you'll mix red and white, you get pink.
8- If you will water plants regularly they grow well.
9- If you heat water to 100 º C it will boil.
10-If you will eat an apple every day, you'll be very healthy.
11-She looks completely different if she cuts her hair.
12-You get heart disease if you eat too much meat.
13-You don't pass the course if you don't study.
14-If I cook some eggs, how many did you eat?
15-If you do not study, you would fail the test.
16-If you look in the fridge, you would find some cold drinks.
17-If there was no oil in the engine, the car will break down.
18-I will lend you my umbrella if you will need it.
19-The sea level would rise if the planet gets hotter.
20-You be safe in an accident if you wear your seatbelt.

Language Functions

Asking for instructions طلب تعليمات	Giving instructions اعطاء تعليمات
How can I operate this coffee machine?	First switch it on, then press اضغط على the red button.
Can you show me how to use this vacuum cleaner?	First, connect it to the electricity supply. After that, press the red button
Can you tell me how to make tea the English way?	First, boil some water. Then, put some tea into the put. Finally, pour the boiling water on the tea.

01000453264 01287277089

✍ ***Respond to each of the following situations:***

1- You ask your friend to show you how to log onto the internet.
2- You want to make tea the English way. You ask your friend what you should do.
3- You ask the policeman for instructions to get to the bus station.
4- Your friend asks you to show him how to make tea.

Test on Unit 6

1- Respond to the following situations:

1. You want to make tea the English way. Ask your friend for advice.
2. Your sister ask for your advice about how to keep fit.
3.You are at an interview. You are asked about your marital status.
4. You are introduced to someone you have never met before.

2-Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1- A: I'd like to renew my passport, please.
B: You need to fill in this form and bring two recent photos.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................. - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

2-A: Can I book a flight to London, please?
B: Sure. When would you like to travel?
A: Tomorrow morning.
Place: .... - Speaker A:................. - Speaker B:............. - Function: ....

3- Choose the correct answer:

1-The (leaves – roots – bark – branches) are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.
2-The hard outside part of a tree is called the (ark – clerk – bark – park).
3-(Leaves – Roots – Bark – Branches) are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.
4-A fruit grows on a plant or tree and has (leaves – roots – seeds – branches) inside.
5-Every year, trees grow extra (rings – sings – brings- kings) of new wood.
6-The liquid that carries food in trees is called (lab – map – nap – sap).
7-A piano is a musical (measurement -instrument – movement – improvement) .
8-We can use turpentine to (remove – prove – disprove – drove) paint.
9-I get a headache if I (will spend – spent – am spending – spend) too long on the computer.
10-If she (train – will train – trains – has trained) hard, she will win next week's race.
11-If you mix red and white, you (may get – might get – would get – get) pink.
12-If you (are practising – practises – practise – had practised) a sport, you get better at it.
13-If you work hard, you (will do – would do – have done – are doing) well in the test.
14-If you (read – are reading – were reading – reads) quickly, you learn quickly, too.
15-If you plant a tree, it (help – is helping – might help – helps) the world to breathe.
16-If you plant a tree, it (will look – has looked – is looking – might have looked) lovely in a few years.

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write it correctly:

1- If he paid me tonight, I'll have enough money for the tickets.
2- If I get a work permit, I stay for another six months.
3- If he agrees to let me go on working after marriage, I would marry him.
4- There is no tooth decay in these tubes.
5- This instance measures breathing and blood pressure.

6-Her company has benches in Cairo and Alexandria.

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions: (August, 2007)

A tuk-tuk is a type of taxi with three wheels. The driver sits at the front and behind him is a seat for three passengers. Sometimes four passengers can fit into the tuk-tuk, but it is very uncomfortable! They are called tuk-tuks because of the funny sounds of their small engines. There are thousands of tuk-tuks in Bangkok, Thailand.

One tuk-tuk driver is Pom Sanniwat. Pom is 52 years old and has been driving his tuk-tuk for almost 25 years. Like many tuk-tuk drivers, Pom comes from the north of Thailand. Pom's village was very poor. There was no work on the farms, so Pom came to Bangkok. He decided to become a tuk-tuk driver because it looked like fun.

Pom likes being a tuk-tuk driver because he can speak to many people every day. He can also earn over $400 a month. Almost anyone can become a tuk-tuk driver. Tuk-tuks are very easy to drive. But driving a tuk-tuk has its disadvantages, too. When Pom started driving his tuk-tuk, he often got lost. Pom also has a long day. He works from 6 o'clock in the morning until 9 at night. There are many cars and buses in Bangkok, so there is a lot of pollution. The pollution is bad for Pom's health.

Answer the following questions:

1-Why does Pom like his job as a tuk-tuk driver?

2-Why is driving a tuk-tuk bad for Pom's health?

3-What do you think of the tuk-tuk as a means of transportation? Why?

Choose the correct answer:

5- -------------- passengers can sit comfortably in a tuk-tuk.

a) Three b) Four

c) Five d) Six

6-Tuk-tuks are ------------ in Bangkok, Thailand.

a) rare b) uncommon c) available d) banned

6- Read the following passage then answer the questions below :

For most of us, the idea of soup which stops us getting ill, or crisps which relax us seems like something from a science-fiction film. However, these food products known as "functional foods" may already be on your supermarket's shelves.

In today's world, we all know that our diet affects our health. Therefore, food companies are taking advantage of this fact. They have already started to use ingredients in their products which will offer extra health benefits to their customers. For example, orange juice already contains vitamin C, but now you can buy orange juice with added calcium to strengthen your bones and teeth.

Of course, there are people who believe that functional foods are a bad idea. They claim that products such as these can be dangerous, as people may end up taking more vitamins than they need and may damage their bodies as a result. Nevertheless, functional foods are becoming increasingly popular, and supporters feel that it won't be long before there are foods which prevent cancer, protect eyesight and much more.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why are some people against functional foods ?

2- What are the advantages of functional foods ?

3- Would you like your regular meals to include functional foods ? Why ?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4- Some food companies benefit from functional foods by................. .

a) offering extra health advantages to their customers.

b) reducing vitamins in their products.

c) helping customers save more money.

d) helping customers consume more food.

5- A suitable title for the passage can be:.......................... .

a) "The Advantages of Functional Foods" b) "The Disadvantages of Functional Foods"
c) "Functional Foods in Science Fiction" d) "A New Type of Foods"

D- Writing

8- Write a letter to your friend Peter giving him advice about the best way to study his lessons. Your name is Michael.

9- A) Translate into Arabic: (August, 2007)

Poverty and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets. Sooner or later, street children will turn to a life of crime. The whole society should help these children grow up to become good citizens.

B) Translate into English:

1-يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعة و التكنولوجيا.

2-زيادة ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي هي السبب الرئيسي للاحتباس الحراري.

Review B



Tape script

Presenter:

In last week's a programme, Professor Jeremy Beech answered some of your questions about trees. Today we welcome professor Beech back to talk about forests. Professor, could you start by telling us about the different kinds of forest?

Professor Beech:

Yes, of course. Well, as you all know, a forest is a large area of land which is covered by trees. About twenty percent of the earth's surface is covered with forest. Different climates and soils support different types of forest. Let's look first at rain forests, like the ones in South America and Central Africa. Here, temperatures are high and it rains a lot. There are many different types of trees in rain forests. Some grow very tall to reach the sunlight above. Below them are shorter trees, and below these are other low plants. Rain forests make up about seven percent of the earth's surface.

The second type of forests is found in places where the climate is neither very hot nor very cold. These forests consist of trees which lose their leaves in the winter or in the dry season.

The final kind of forest is found in countries with cold climates and on the sides of mountains. Most of the trees here never lose the leaves. Their branches point downwards so that snow can fall off them during the winter. The largest forest of this type is northern Europe and covers eleven million square kilometres.

Presenter:

That's very interesting, Professor. Thank you. Now, if any listeners would like to ask professor Beech a question, you can contact the programme.

Reading	Murder on the Orient Express	((((((

Hercule Poirot, probably Agatha Christie's most famous detective, had finished working on a crime in Turkey and was about to go home on the Orient Express. When Poirot got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of year.

Soon after the train had left Istanbul, a wealthy businessman, Mr. Ratchett, asked Poirot to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Ratchett offered Poirot a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy snow. The next morning, Ratchett was found dead: He had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Poirot believed Ratchett's story and, together with a doctor who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that Ratchett had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and Ratchett's body, Poirot realized that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as Ratchett. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, Poirot discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Ratchett. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. This was why the Orient Express had been so full on that journey.

New Vocabulary

offer	يعرض	covered by/with	مغطي ب	do a survey	يعمل دراسة مسح
play a role	يلعب دور	support	يساند – يدعم	preferences	اشياء مفضلة

01000453264

01287277089

get on	يركب	low	منخفض	put down roots	يقيم- يستقر
hate	يكره	make up	يؤلف	take in	يستوعب- يمتص
take part in	يشارك في	detective	مخبر سري	give out	يطلق -يبعث
make changes to	**يجري تغييرات علي**	wealthy	ثري	diseases	امراض

Exercise

5. What would you say in these situations

1 – You are asked about the importance of rainforests.
2 – A friend asks your advice about places to see in Egypt.
3 – A friend wants to use a public phone, give him instructions.
4 – Someone asks what you think about films which have been made from books.

6. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 – When I was at school I won poetry writing ………………
a – race b – article c – competition d – game
2 – She sent me the report as an e-mail …………………
a – attachment b – letter c – picture d – article
3 – The little girl doesn't want to sing because she is ………………..
a – innocent b - secret c – spy d – shy
4 – My favourite musical ………………………….. is the piano.
a – player b – instrument c – tool d – equipment
5 – I collect postcards which I keep in a ……………………………..box.
a – paper b – card c – cardboard d – wood
6 – We arrived half an hour late. The film ………… half an hour earlier.
a – began b – was beginning c – had begun d – has begun
7 – Agatha Christie's books ……………… into more than 40 languages.
a – have been translated b – have translated
c – translated d – were being translated
8 – The Romans …………. Petra nearly two thousand years ago.
a – have captured b – were captured
c – had captured d - captured
9 – Your train leaves in ten minutes. If you hurry, you will ……… it.
a – catch b –will catch c – would catch d – are catching
10 – If I am thirsty, I ………….. water.
a – will drink b – would drink c – am drinking d – drink

7. find and Correct the mistake in each sentence:

1 – My father loves his job, he worked for the same company for 20 years
2 – When I was younger , I use to want to be a pilot.
3 – If you kick the ball too hard , you break that window.

01000453264 01287277089

4 – The mousetrap written by Agatha Christie.

5 – Travelling by plane sometimes makes me a headache.

6 – The street where I live is only three metres width.

8. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

More about trees

Trees have often been important in history. On the Greek island of Kos , there is a tree that is more than 12 metres in width. It is growing in exactly the same place as Hippocrates , the father of medicine , used to teach his pupils .And in another place and time , the English hero Robin's Hood is believed to have hidden from his enemies in the branches of large trees.

The English language uses many words connected with trees. You can talk about the branches of a bank or a shop and the trunk of the human body, And if someone has lived somewhere for a long time ,you can say they have put down roots.

1- What does the phrase the father of medicine mean?

2- Why did Robin Hood hide in trees?

3- What is a branch of a bank?

4- What did Hippocrates do on the island of Kos?

a- He grew trees.

b- He treated patients.

c – He taught pupils.

d- He took medicine.

5- You say people have put down roots when they have

a- stayed in a place for a long time

b- lived near some trees

c-moved house

d- just moved somewhere new.

9. Write a paragraph of 100 words about :

A movie/ film you have enjoyed recently

10. Translation :

Translate into Arabic:

If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastics. Wood products are also used in some types of ice cream.

Translate into English :

1- بينما كان ينهي قصة كان يفكر في القصة التالية.

2- لقد نشرت كتبها في اكثر من مائة دولة.

Unit 7: Building and Engineering



Tape script

Tourist: Excuse me, could you tell me the best way to go to the city centre, please?
Egyptian man: Yes, the quickest way from here is to take an underground train.
Tourist: I didn't know Cairo had underground trains.
Egyptian man: Yes, it's the only underground railway system in Africa or the Middle East. I know this because I **work on** it as an engineer!
Tourist: Is it new?
Egyptian man: No, but it's a lot newer than London or Paris System. The first line **opened** in 1989. It's about 44 kilometres long and goes from the Helwan, in the south of Cairo, to New El Marg in the northeast.
Tourist: Really? That really must have made travelling around Cairo easier, especially for commuters.
Egyptian man: It certainly has. Trains carry **nearly** two million people every day.
Tourist: Is it expensive?
Egyptian man: No, not at all. That's one of the best things about it. Journeys cost the same whether you travel between the stations or go from one end of the line to the other.
Tourist: That's fantastic! It must have saved people a lot of money and improved the journeys to work.
Egyptian man: It has.
Tourist: So how many lines are there in the system?
Egyptian man: There are two at the moment, but there are plans for six lines. Line two goes from Shobra to El Monib. It goes under the Nile.
Tourist: Really? That's amazing! Tunnelling under the Nile can't have been easy.
Egyptian man: They used a massive drilling machine called Nefertiti. It dug a tunnel with a diameter of over eight meters.
Tourist: Is there a line to the airport?
Egyptian man: No, not yet- that'll be line three. They've started work on it already.
Tourist: the whole thing sounds like a massive engineering project. It can't have been cheap.
Egyptian man: No, it wasn't, but we're very **proud of** it, and it's considered to be one of the most modern underground systems in the world. And, of course, it's an investment in Egypt's future as a centre for tourism and business.
Tourist: when will it be finished?
Egyptian man: All six lines might be open by 2022.

Reading	**Great engineering**	

Egypt has many amazing works of engineering, both ancient and modern. South of Aswan, for example, Abu Simbel is the site of two temples which were carved into a cliff in about 1250 BCE. The larger temple **was** positioned **so that** at certain times of the year, the **rays** of the rising sun **would** illuminate the statues of Ptah, Amun-Re, Rams



In 1954, the government decided to build Aswan High Dam. This meant that the Nile Valley would be flooded and that Abu Simbel itself would be under water. It was **unthinkable** that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments, so plans were made to rescue it.
The massive statues were **cut into** pieces which weighed over 3
raised over 60 metres up the cliff, where they were attached to a

01000453264
01287277089

thousands of workers more than three years to complete. Today, the temples, which were re-opened in 1968, are an amazing combination of ancient and modern engineering.
Many years after the building of Abu Simbel, China had a different problem which was solved by another great engineering project. Many years ago, enemies were attacking the rich towns of northern China. The emperor decided to keep the attacks out, so work on the Great Wall of China began in 220 BCE and continued for hundreds of years. **Eventually**, the wall reached a length of 6400 km. It is the longest structure ever built and was all made without machines. Its five-meter width is wide enough for soldiers to ride along on horses to stop attackers from climbing over the wall.

Key Vocabulary

commuter	شخص يسافر الى و من العمل	carve	ينحت
diameter	قطر	cliff	جرف: منحدر صخرى شاهق
engineering	الهندسة	illuminate	ينير / يضئ
investment	استثمار	monument	اثر
invest	يستثمر	be positioned	يوضع فى مكان معين
investor	مستثمر	raise	يرفع / يربى
massive	ضخم / هائل	rays	أشعة
base	قاعدة	unthinkable	غير وارد التفكير فيه / مستحيل

Vocabulary

regularly	بانتظام	lift	يرفع
underground	مترو الانفاق	beams	أشعة
engineer	مهندس	temples	معابد
railway system	نظام السكة الحديد	site	موقع
The Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	rising sun	شمس مشرقة
metro line	خط المترو	statues	تماثيل
carry	ينقل	flood	يفيض / فيضان
save	يوفر	rescue	ينقذ / انقاذ
improve	يحسن	weigh	يزن
tunnel	نفق / يشق نفق	weight	وزن
tunneling	شق الانفاق	concrete	خرسانة
drilling machine	ماكينة الحفر	storm	عاصفة
dig / dug / dug	يحفر	The Nile Valley	وادى النيل
engineering project	مشروع هندسى	re-open	يعيد افتتاح
consider	يعتبر	combination	خليط / مزيج
branch	فرع (شجرة / شركة)	enemies	أعداء
deduce	يستنتج	attack	يهجم على / هجوم
deduction	استنتاج	attacker	مهاجم
shut	يغلق	emperor	امبراطور
gate	بوابة	empire	امبراطورية
obvious	واضح	eventually	فى النهاية
crane	ونش / رافعة	The Great Wall of China	سور الصين العظيم
steep	منحدر	iron bridge	جسر حديدى
structure	بناء	design	يصمم (شئ)
palace	قصر	homeland	الوطن
sculpture	تمثال	settlements	مستوطنات
sculptor	نحات / مثال	natural disasters	كوارث طبيعية

pharaoh	فرعون	maintain	يصون / يحافظ على
pharonic	فرعونى	laws	قوانين
threaten	يهدد	cable car	عربة قطار هوائية
threat	تهديد	spectacular views	مناظر رائعة
process	عملية	slaves	عبيد
historical buildings	مبانى تاريخية	manually	يدويا
convince	يقنع	plan	خطة
construction	تشييد / بناء	steel	الصلب
table mountain	جبل الطاولة (من أهم معالم كيب تاون في جنوب أفريقيا)		

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

on the underground	بالمترو	draw a plan	يرسم خطة
proud of	فخور بـ	be cut into pieces	يقطع الى قطع
take the underground	يركب المترو	be attached to	متصل بـ
a centre for	مركز لـ	keep ... out	يبعد ......
get to	يصل الى	ride on a horse	يركب حصان
covered in	مغطى بـ	be made out of	مصنوع من
miss the train	يفوته القطار	escape from	يهرب من
reason for	سبب لـ	have effects on	له تأثير على
fall off the bike	يسقط من على الدراجة	prevent ... from	يمنع ... من
take a test	يمتحن	provide ... for	يوفر ... لـ
cut into rock	يحفر فى الصخر	come to an agreement on	يصل الى اتفاق على
remind ... of	يذكر ... بـ	accessible to	متاح لـ
connect ... with	يوصل ... بـ	reach a length of	يصل طوله الى
be carved into a cliff	منحوت فى الجرف	attractive to	جذاب لـ
make plans	يعد خطط	related to	مرتبط بـ

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word الكلمة		Antonym العكس	
save	يوفر	waste	يبدد
modern	حديث	ancient	قديم
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
massive	هائل / ضخم	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
the same	نفس الشئ	different	مختلف

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
engineer يهندس / يرتب	engineer مهندس engineering هندسة	
mass يتكتل	mass كتلة	massive ضخم / هائل
commute يسافر الى و من العمل	commuter مسافر الى و من العمل	
invest يستثمر	investment استثمار investor مستثمر	

Definitionsتعريفات

Commuter	someone who regularly travels to work, especially a long

مسافر الى مكان العمل و منه	distance
Diameter قطر	a line that goes from one side of a circle to the other and passes through the centre
Engineering هندسة	the work of designing the way roads, bridges, machines, etc. are built
Investment استثمار	something that you buy because it will be valuable or useful later
Massive ضخم / هائل	Very big
Base قاعدة	a low hard surface on which other things can be built/the lowest part or surface of something
Carve ينحت	to cut something, especially stone or wood, into a particular shape
Cliff جرف:منحدر صخرى	a high steep rock or piece of land
Illuminate ينير	to make light shine on something
Monument أثر	a large structure that is built to remind people of an important event or famous person
Position يضع فى مكان معين	put something or someone in a place
Raise يرفع	to move or lift something to a higher position
Rays أشعة	narrow beams شعاع of light or energy from the sun
Unthinkable مستحيل غير وارد التفكير فيه	impossible to imagine or accept

Confusable Words

commuter	مسافر يوميا الى مكان العمل و منه باشتراك موسمى
traveler	المسافر عموما

Ex: The train was packed with **commuters**.
This hotel is for serious **travellers**, rather than tourists.

cost يكلف	pay يدفع

Ex: It **costs** a lot to buy a house in this part of London.
How much did you **pay** for the tickets?

save يوفر	waste يبدد
spend ينفق (المال) / يقضى (الوقت)	keep يحتفظ فى

Ex: people can **save** money by traveling on the underground.
You'll **save** time if you take the car.
He **wasted** a lot of money on that car.
She **spends** a lot of money on clothes.
He **keeps** his money in the bank.

take the train يركب القطار	catch the train يلحق القطار
miss the train يفوته القطار	miss someone / a place يفتقد (شخص / مكان)

Ex: I always **take** the train - it's less hassle than a car.
She was worried that she'd arrive too late to **catch** the last train home.
You'll **miss** your train if you don't hurry up.
I **miss** my old friends very much.
He **missed** the 9:30 train.

work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقها أداة)
a work of	عمل (فنى / أدبى / هندسى)

works	أعمال فنية أو أدبية

Ex: It takes a lot of **work** to build a house.
Mr Mark leaves **work** at two o'clock every day.
Abu Simbel is an amazing **work** of engineering عمل هندسى رائع
Egypt has many amazing **works** of engineering أعمال هندسية رائعة

rise (rose / risen)	تشرق / يزداد / يستيقظ / يقف / يتصاعد (لا يليه مفعول)
arise (arose / arisen)	يظهر / يحدث (لا يليه مفعول)

Ex: The sun **rises** in the east.
Prices **have risen** by 10%.
She **rises** at 6 every day.
He **rose** from his chair to greet me.
Smoke **rose** from the burning factory.
A lot of problems often **arise** in this factory.

raise (raised / raised)	يثير / يرفع/ يجمع / يربى/ يزيد (يليه مفعول)
arouse (aroused/aroused)	يثير (يجعل الشخص يحس بشعور ما) (يليه مفعول)

Ex: The manager **raised** my salary.
Raise hopes آمال / fears مخاوف/ suspicionsشكوك / interest اهتمام
Parents do their best to **raise** their children.
They **are raising** money for the blind.
Raise your hand if you know the answer.
Raise your voice, please.
arouse feelings مشاعر / interest اهتمام/ fears مخاوف / suspicions (doubts) شكوك

compare ... to	يشبه ... بـ	compared to / with	بالمقارنة بـ
compare ... with ...	يقارن ... بـ	in comparison with / to	بالمقارنة بـ

Ex: Poets often **compare** sleep **to** death.
He **compared** the Cairo underground **with** those in London and Paris.
Compared to our car, their car is rather expensive.
In comparison to / with the French, the British eat far less fish.

historic (famous or important in history)	ذو أهمية تاريخية
historical (connected with the study of history)	مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ

Ex: **historic** building مبنى / place مكان / event حدث / moment لحظة / day يوم/
date تاريخ / site موقع / occasion مناسبة / monuments آثار
historical research بحث / papers أبحاث / studies دراسات / plays مسرحيات /
films أفلام / novels روايات / events أحداث / records سجلات /sites مواقع /
character شخصية / monuments آثار

Language Notes

have difficulty in + v. + ing	لديه صعوبة فى

Ex: People with asthma الربو **have difficulty in breathing**.

فيما يلي لاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر in		
3 metres in height	5 inches in length	5 metres in width
وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة		
3 metres high	5 inches long	5 metres wide

Ex: The top of the wall is five metres **wide**.
The top of the wall is five metres **in width**.

01000453264 01287277089

Ever + PP. = that have (has) ever been + PP

Ex: The Great Wall of China is the longest structure ever built.
= It is the longest structure that has ever been built.

stop.....from + v. + ing يمنع .... من

Ex: They wanted to **stop** enemies **from attacking** their country.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1- Your friend seems happy. He took the exam result yesterday.
2- Your teacher told you the Suez Canal took thousands of workers to dig it.
3- Your friend tells you thatThe Trans-Siberian Railway is the longest railroad in the world.
4- Your friend asks you why the table mountain cable car was built.
5-Karim thought he had shut the gate to the field, but now the goats are all in the road.
6-. Leila took her driving test yesterday .Now she is looking unhappy.
7-. My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41.
8-. Someone asks you why the Pyramids were built.
9-. Why is everyone putting their umbrellas up?
10. You suddenly find out that there is no money in your pocket. You make a deduction.
11. Your brother asks you how they built the Great Wall of China.
12. Your friend asks you why the table mountain cable car was built.
13. Your friend phoned you several times, but you didn't answer.
14. Your friend seems happy. He took the exam result yesterday.
15. Your friend tells you thatThe Trans-Siberian Railway is the longest railroad in the world.
16. Your teacher told you the Suez Canal took thousands of workers to dig it.

2-Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A: Excuse me. I need to find out about modern farming in Egypt for a university project.
B: All the information on agriculture is on the second floor.
A: Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?
B: Yes. Just bring them to the desk near the entrance.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

2- A: Do you remember what happened? B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.
A: How do you fell now? B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?
A: We are not sure yet. We will have to check you have no broken bones.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3 - A: My parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

4- A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?
B: Your biology department has a very good reputation.
A: And if we accept you,What do you hope to do when you graduate?
B: Well, I would like to work for a food company.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

5- A: Your ticket and passport, please. B: Here you are.
A: Would you like a window seat or an aisle seat? B: A window seat, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

6 - A : Can I help you madam? B : Two kilos of meat , please. A : It is 135 pounds.

01000453264 01287277089

Place: .... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1) Could you tell me the best .... to go to the city centre, please?

a- way	**b- method**	**c- route**	**d- root**

2) The .... way from here is to take an underground train.

a- long	**b- short**	**c- expensive**	**d- quickest**

3) Cairo Metro is the .... underground railway system in Africa or the Middle East.

a- lonely	**B-alone**	**c- only**	**d- solo**

4) It's ....newer than London or Paris System.

a- more	**b- a lot**	**c- less**	**d- most**

5) The first line .... in 1989. It's about 44 kilometres long and goes from the Helwan to New El Marg.

a-was opened	**b- is opened**	**c- opened**	**d-opens**

6) Cairo Metro must have made travelling around Cairo easier for.....

a- commuters	**b- commutes**	**c- communicators**	**d-compensators**

7) Trains carry .... two million people every day.

a- exactly	**b- near**	**c-accurately**	**d- nearly**

8) ....by metro cost the same whether you travel between the stations or go from one end of the line to the other.

a-Journey	**b- Journeys**	**c- Travelling**	**d- Going**

9) The metro must have .... people a lot of money and improved the journeys to work.

a- rescued	**B saved**	**c- provided**	**d- supplied**

10)There are two lines in the metro system at the moment, but there are .... for six lines.

a- plans	**b- works**	**c- hopes**	**d- wishes**

11)............. under the Nile can't have been easy.

a- Diving	**b- Sailing**	**c- Swimming**	**d- Tunnelling**

12)They used a massive drilling machine called Nefertiti. It dug a tunnel with a ....of over eight meters.

a- monometer	**b- diameter**	**c- trimetric**	**d- hemi meter**

13)The whole thing sounds like a ....engineering project. It can't have been cheap.

a- mass	**b- masses**	**c- misses**	**d- massive**

14)We're very ....the underground, and it's considered to be one of the most modern underground systems in the world.

a- pride of	**b- ashamed of**	**c- proud of**	**d- shy of**

15)The underground is an .... in Egypt's future as a centre for tourism and business.

a- investor	**b- investing**	**c- investment**	**d- investments**

S.B Exercise

16) Egypt has many amazing ... of engineering, both ancient and modern.

a- works	**b- work**	**c- establishments**	**d- sites**

15) Abu Simbel is the site of two temples which were ....a cliff in about 1250 BC.

a- built into	**b- made into**	**c- carved into**	**d- curved**

16) The larger temple was ....so that at certain times of the year, the rays of the rising sun would illuminate the statues .

a- put	**b- positioned**	**c- built**	**d- constructed**

17) The government decided to build Aswan High Dam. Thus, the Nile Valley would be ....and that Abu Simbel itself would be under water.

a- flooded	**b- watered**	**c- dried**	**d- dug**

18)It was ....that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments, so plans were made to rescue it.

a- thinkable	**b- unthinkable**	**c- thoughtful**	**d- thoughtless**

19) The massive statues were into pieces which ....over 30 tonnes each.

a- weighed	**b- weighted**	**c-weigh**	**d- weightless**

20) These pieces were raised over 60 metres up the cliff, where they were ....to a concrete base.

a- cut	**d- tied**	**c- attached**	**d- connected**

21)Today, the temples, which were .... in 1968, are an amazing combination of ancient and modern engineering.

a- opened	**b- re-opening**	**c- re-opened**	**d- opening**

22)Enemies were.................. the rich towns of northern China.

a- attack	**b- attacking**	**c- provoking**	**d- retaking**

23)The emperor decided to ....the attacks out, so work on the Great Wall of China began in 220 BC .

a- preserving	**b- consecrating**	**c- Leap**	**d- keep**

24)Eventually, the wall reached a length of 6400 km. It is the longest ....ever built and was all made without machines.

a- super structure	**b- structure**	**c- infrastructure**	**d- inner structure**

25)Its five-meter width is ....enough for soldiers to ride along on horses to stop attackers from climbing over the wall.

a- wide	**b- long**	**c- high**	**d- deep**

W.B Exercise

26) My father studied ......at university and has designed many important bridges

a- engineer **b-engineering** **c- engine** **d- mechanism**

27) Education is an / a .....in the future of a country and its young people

a- aim **b- wish** **c- hope** **d- investment**

28)Nearly four million ....travel to and from London every day.

a- travelers **b- passengers** **c- commuters** **d-workers**

29)The Great Wall of china was a/an ....project which took hundreds of years to complete.

a- investment **b- mass** **c- massive** **d- masses**

30)That tunnel has a ....of 7.6 metres.

a- size **b- volume** **c- width** **d- diameter**

31)The verb of "engineering" is ....

a- engine **b-engineer** **c- eugenics** **d- engines**

32)"Massive" is an adjective, but ....is the noun.

a- masses **b-mass** **c-miss** **d- mess**

33)"Commuter" is a noun but ....is a verb.

a- communicate **b- commute** **c- commit** **d- commutate**

34)"Investment" is a noun but ....is a verb.

a- investigate **b- invest** **c- insist** **d- persist**

35)The quickest way to get to the city centre is to ....an underground train.

a- come **b- have** **c- take** **d- ride**

36)A journey on the underground ....one pound.

a- costs **b-pays** **c-worth** **d- takes up**

37)people can ....money by travelling on the underground.

a- keep **b- rescue** **c- safe** **d-save**

38)The first line of the Paris Metro system ....in 1900.

a- started **b- opened** **c- ended** **d- finished**

39)................is a hard surface on which other things can be built.

a- basic **b- bases** **c- base** **d- basis**

40)To ....is to cut stone or wood in a particular shape.

a- crave **B carve** **c- curve** **d- carver**

41)To ....is to make light shine on something.

a- roommate **b- illumine** **c- illuminate** **d- terminate**

42)A large structure that is built to remind us of an important event or a famous person is a ....

a- manumit **Monument** **c- memorial** **d- memory**

43)The height of the ....is 25 metres.

a- way **b- tunnel** **c-cliff** **d- route**

44)The artist ....the structure from a massive piece of stone.

a- curved **b- craved** **c- carved** **d- covered**

45)At night , bright lights always ....in front of the palace.

a- lighten **b-Light** **c- illuminate** **d- ammoniate**

46) if you want to ask the teacher a question , you should .....your hand.

a- rise **b- arise** **c- arouse** **d- raise**

47)The sphinx is ....near the Pyramids of Giza.

a- Put **b- positioned** **c- laid** **d- lie**

48)The statue of the pharaoh is a famous ancient............ .

a- memorial **b- souvenir** **c- memory** **d- monument**

49)The statue is built on a hard ....made of concrete.

a- basis	**b- basic**	**c- base**	**d- bases**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1- A strong economy depends on a healthy manufacturing basic.
2--A transporter is someone who travels a long distance to work every day..
3- Egypt has many amazed works of engineering.
4-- He infected his life savings in his daughter's business.
5- It was thinkable that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments.
6-- It was unthinking that she could be dead.
7-- It's the only grounded railway system in Africa or the Middle East..
8-- Keep away from the edge of the stiff - you might fall.
9- -The Cairo underground line is 44 km length.
10- -The earth is discriminated by the sun.
11- -The emperor decided to keep the attacks away.
12- -The explosion made a passive hole in the ground.
13- The funnel goes under the Nile.
14-The government has made a plan to rise taxes.
15-The Great Pyramid is about 150 metres height.
16- The Great Wall of China is 6,400 Km wide.
17- The Great Wall of china is the longest structure never built.
18- The Great Wall of China was built to keep the attackers of.
19-The statue was possessed at the entrance of the castle.
20-The street is 50 metres length.
21- The top of the wall is 5 m long.
22-The width of the tunnel is eight metres.
23--There are a lot of history monuments in Egypt.
24-They used a massive drill machine called Nefertiti.
25- -This statue is built on a hard basis of concrete.
26- -Trains carry near two million people every day.
27- -We should stop people pollute the environment.

Translate into Arabic:

1- You can never live in isolation from others, so you have to be careful when you choose a home for the future. You will certainly be lucky to have good co-operative neighbours, but it is misery to live next door to neighbours from hell.

2-In 1954, the government decided to build Aswan High Dam. This meant that the Nile Valley would be flooded and that Abu Simbel itself would be under water. It was unthinkable that Egypt should lose one of its most important monuments, so plans were made to rescue it.

7-Translate into English:

1- تكمن اهمية مترو القاهرة في انه قضي علي الاختناق المروري في القاهرة و وفر الوقت و المال و الجهد.

2- تمتلك مصر الكثير من الاعمال الهندسية الرائعة ؛القديمة و الحديثة.

Language Focus

Deduction الاستنتاج

يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لعمل استنتاج سواء فى المضارع أو الماضى

1- للتعبير عن التأكد..must / can't + inf فى المضارع نستخدم

- You **must be** Fahmy. I met you at a language conference in Cairo years ago.
  (I'm sure you are Fahmy.)
- You **must speak** good Arabic if you've lived here for 10 years.
  (I'm sure you speak good Arabic.)
- That **can't be** Kamal. He looks too old.
  (I'm sure you are not Kamal.)

2- للتعبير عن التأكد. must / can't + have + pp فى الماضى نستخدم

- Passing his driving test must have made Ahmed very happy.
  (I'm sure passing his driving test made Ahmed very happy.)
- My father must have walked to work this morning.
  (I'm sure he walked to school this morning.)
- Ali was not at the meeting. He can't have read my e-mail.
  (I'm sure he didn't read my e-mail.)
- You can't have finished that book already.
  (I'm sure you didn't finish it.)

3- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد فى المضارع نستخدم may / might + inf.

- He might / may be at home. I'm not sure.

4- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد فى الماضى نستخدم may / might + have + pp

- He might have rung yesterday evening. (It is possible but I am not sure.)
- Going by car might have taken longer than going by train. (But it might not.)

5- للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث شئ فى الماضى. couldn't + have + pp نستخدم

- Emad didn't take his keys with him. He **couldn't have seen** them on the table.

Choose the correct answer:

1- A: I don't know where my school bag is, Mum?
   B: It's not here. You (mustn't-can't-might-won't) have left it on the train.
2- A: Look, Hesham's keys are on the table.
   B: He (must-can't-might-may) have seen them when he left this morning.
3- A: I rang you this morning, but you didn't answer.

B: Sorry, I (can't-might not-may not-must) have been asleep.

4- A: He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.
B: Surely he (must-can't-might-may) have finished the experiment already.

5- A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. Do you know if he's OK?
B: His mother says he (might-will-can-didn't) have broken his arm.

6- Everyone is putting their umbrella up. It (must-might-may-can't) have started raining.

7- Leila looks very unhappy. She (may-might-can't-must) have passed her driving test.

8- The goats are all in the road. He (mustn't-can't-might-may) have shut the gate to the field.

9- The telephone rang, but I didn't hear it. I (can't have been-would have been-must have been-might have been) asleep.

10-You've only been in the laboratory for half an hour. You (can't have finished-must have finished-would have finished-finished) your experiment already.

11-Emad didn't take his keys with him. He (could have seen-could see-might see-couldn't have seen) them on the table.

12-This (may-can't-must-could) be his car. He's too poor to afford such an expensive car.

13-David isn't here. He (must-can-ought-should) have gone home to study for the test tomorrow.

14-Ahmed is a professor of Chemistry. He must (be-have been-have-had been) very clever at school.

15-He (must have-can't have-might-can) have missed his train. He's usually late.

16-His watch (must-might-can-can't) have cost a lot of money. It's made of plastic.

17-It (can't have-will have-must have-didn't have) been very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.

18-Tunnelling under the Nile (must have-may have-can't have-might have) been easy. I'm sure it was difficult.

19-My father (didn't have-won't have-shall have-must have) walked to work this morning. His car is still in the garage.

20-He can't walk. He (must-mustn't-shouldn't-won't) be ill.

21-He spends so much money. He (can't-shouldn't-must-won't) be rich.

22-You (can't have-must have-should have-will have) finished that book already. You bought it only yesterday and it is very long.

23-He (can't have-mustn't have-must have-should have) been injured. There was blood on his face.

24-The streets are wet. It (must rain-can't rain-must have rained-should have rained) last night.

25-I can't find the theatre tickets. They (must have fallen-can't have fallen-had to fall-mustn't have fallen) out of my pocket.

✍ ***Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:***

1- He must have failed the exam. He looks very happy.
2- That house must have been build a few years ago.
3- He couldn't have catch the bus.
4- Samy must have been at school. He was in Alexandria.
5- You've just had lunch. You mustn't be hungry already.
6- I didn't hear the phone. I can't have been asleep.
7- Ali hasn't contacted me. He must have got my message.
8- A: I can't find my bag anywhere.
B: You might have leave it in the shop.
9- There can't have been a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
10-She might have ring me early this morning.
11- He has three cars and a villa. He must be very poor.
12- You can't be joking. I can't possibly lend you that sum of money.
13-Emad didn't take his keys with him. He must have seen them on the table.

01000453264 01287277089

14-You can't be Fahmy. I met you at a language conference in Cairo years ago.
15-Ali was not at the meeting. He must have read my e-mail.

Language Functions

Language to deduce information

Why do you think they built the Suez Canal?	I think they must have built it to make travelling by sea easier.
How do you think they built the Suez Canal?	Well, they might have used thousands of workers.
What problems and difficulties do you think there were in (building..)?	I'm sure it can't have been easy. Surely, it must have cost a lot of money.

Respond to each of the following situations:

1- Someone asks you "Why do you think the Great Wall of China was built?"
2- You ask a friend about how he thinks they built the Pyramids.
3- Someone asks you "What problems and difficulties do you think there were in (building the Pyramids?"
4- You ask a friend why he thinks the Pyramids were built.

Test on Unit 7

1- Respond to the following situations:

1-Your friend phoned you several times, but you didn't answer.
2-Your brother asks you how they built the Great Wall of China.
3-Someone asks you why the Pyramids were built.
4-You suddenly find out that there is no money in your pocket. You make a deduction.

2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Your ticket and passport, please.
B: Here you are.
A: Would you like a window seat or an aisle seat?
B: A window seat, please.
Place: .... - Speaker A: ....- Speaker B: .... - Function: ....
2- A: Have you got anything to declare, sir?
B : Just these two laptops.
A: You'll have to pay 300 pounds.
Place: .... - Speaker A: ....- Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3- Choose the correct answer:

1- The tunnel has a (diameter – size – circle - weight) of over eight metres.
2-The underground in Cairo has made it more attractive (to – with – from - of) business people and tourists.
3-Egyptians compare the Cairo underground system (for – with – at - in) those in London and Paris.
4-The Egyptian man feels very (sad – pessimistic – unconfident – proud) of the underground system.
5-Foreign (investment – commitment – agreement – appointment) in Egypt rose by 7% last year.
6-The computer is capable of storing (aggressive – decisive - massive - depressive) amounts of information.

01000453264 01287277089

7-A (commuter – babysitter – plumber - toddler) is someone who travels a long distance to work every day.
8-The Great Wall of China is 6,400 kilometres (length – beneath – long – strength).
9-Passing his driving test (shall – can – must – mustn't) have made Ahmed happy.
10-Ali was not at the meeting. He (must – can't – shouldn't – might) have read my e-mail in which I asked him to come.
11-He (must – can – will – might) have rung yesterday evening, but I'm not sure.
12-He (can't have – should have – shall have – have) finished that book already. I lent it to him only two hours ago.
13-The Cairo underground (can't have – couldn't have – might not have - must have) saved people a lot of money. It's cheaper than any other means of transport.
14-It (can't have – should have – could have – may have) been cheap. It's made of gold.
15-The Cairo underground (didn't have – shouldn't have - must have – have) made travelling around Cairo easier.
16-She (must have - might have – have to have – doesn't have) rung me this morning. I'm not sure.

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write it correctly:
1- The pieces of the statues were attached to a concrete basic.
2-At certain times of the year, the sun eliminates the statue of Ramses II.
3-The temple was curved into a cliff.
4-There can't have been a thunderstorm. The streets are covered in sand.
5-Ali must have forgotten. He's got very good memory.
6-He must have behaved badly. I'm not sure.

5- Read the passage then answer the questions: (June, 2006)
Count me out
Call me old-fashioned. Call me old. Call me what you want, but I refuse to become part of this new Internet world. I don't possess a computer at home or at the office. Actually, I stopped going to an office 35 years ago, when all communications were done in a relaxed manner, with a pen, a typewriter, or, if the matter was of world-shaking importance, over the telephone. Tell me what you think of the following ad that appeared the other day in the newspaper. It was for a cure for cancer and this is what it said: "Awareness is the key. Visit spfulford.com at the awareness site." There was no address or telephone number for the site. So what do unfortunate people without a computer do if they are seeking a cure for their illness? There are, I am told, certain advantages in having access to the latest marvel of the age, the Internet. There are activities for Internet users besides having fun. They can pay bills, order groceries, or discuss illness with their doctor. In the future the Internet may develop "consciousness." In other words, the Internet will be able to think, have feelings, and may well be able to act on its own. If this is right, I may change my attitude about computers. As I grow older each day, I would like a gadget that not only thinks for me but also accepts responsibility for all my mistakes.
A. Answer the following questions
1-What did the writer think was wrong with the Internet ad for a cancer cure?
2-What are three things that people do on the Internet?
3-Which of the writer's points of view do you disagree with? Explain your reason in one sentence of your own.
B) Choose the correct answer:
4-The Internet may develop "consciousness" means it will be able to---------------.
a) cure diseases **b) take responsibility for our action**

c) cure diseases
d) think for the writer

5-When the writer was younger, people communicated with each other by-----------.

a) advertising on the web.
b) writing letters or talking on the phone.
c) communicating with computers.
d) using mobile telephones.

6- Read the passage then answer the questions:

With the introduction of the Internet into our daily lives, we have changed from a society that works from 8 to 2 pm into a twenty-four hour society. You can buy your grocery at midnight, book your holiday on the internet at 3 am and do business online at dawn.

Before you join the 24-hour revolution, take a minute to listen to what your body is trying to tell you. This "round the clock" lifestyle is not what the Great Creator intended for us.

In an area of our brains, we have a "body clock" that controls our body's natural rhythms. It tells us when it is the right time to eat, sleep, work or play. It plays an important part in our physical and psychological well-being. It is, in fact, what makes us control many things including our hormones, temperatures, immune system and activity. If we try to ignore our body clocks, or even to switch them off for a while, we run the risk of seriously damaging our health. Accordingly, we need to have a daily routine.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Mention TWO only of the functions of the "body clock"?

2-Are you for or against the daily routine? Why?

3-What does "It" in the third paragraph refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4- A 24-hour society means a society that works ....

a) day and night b) day only c) night only d) from 8 pm to 2 pm

5- If you switch off your "body clock", ...

a) you'll miss the train
b) you'll damage your health
c) you won't attend the match
d) you'll be late for school

D- Writing

8-Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (June, 2006)
"Thinking about the future"
What will life be like then? Will it be better, worse or the same as now? Think about: technology, medicine, education, food, work and people.

9- A) Translate into Arabic: (June, 2006)
In her speech entitles, "Culture: The Most Effective Language of Peace", Mrs. Mubarak assured that definitions of peace vary. For many, it means absence of war and violence, while others see that it represents the quest for inner peace and security. But for many more, peace is a prerequisite for development and democracy.

B) Translate into Arabic:

1-حصلت مصر علي كأس الأمم الأفريقية هذا العام، محققة بذلك إنجازا عظيما.

2-لابد أن نعيد النظر في الخريطة السكانية لمصر ونشجع الناس علي الانتقال إلي المدن الجديدة.

01000453264 01287277089

Unit 8: Dr Jekyll and Dr Hyde



Tape script

Presenter:

Hello, and welcome to The Book Programme. I'd like to start by telling you something that happened last night. As I was going to bed, I saw that my son's bedroom light was still on. I knocked on the door and went in. My son was reading in bed. I complained that it was rather late and that it was time for him to go to sleep. I said he would be tired the next day.

My son explained that his book was really exciting and he wouldn't be able to sleep until he'd finished it. When I asked him what he was reading, he said, 'Treasure Island'- probably the most popular book by the writer we're looking at today: Robert Louis Stevenson. My guest is Sally Spencer, who's writing a biography of Stevenson. Sally – could you tell us about Stevenson's life?

Sally Spencer:

Certainly. It's not surprising that your son enjoyed Treasure Island. It was written in 1883 and has been a bestseller ever since. The author, Robert Louis Stevenson, was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1850. As a child, he had health problems and spent a lot of time in bed. In 1867 he went to Edinburgh University to study engineering. However, he was more interested in literature. Stevenson soon told his father that he wanted to be a writer.

Presenter: What did his father think about that?

Sally Spencer: He was disappointed because he wanted his son to have a respectable profession. He wanted him to be an engineer like him. But he said his son could be a writer if that was what he wanted.

Presenter: Did he start writing immediately?

Sally Spencer:

No, he didn't. In 1873 was very ill and his doctor told him he should go abroad to recuperate. That's why he went to the south of France, where he started to write essays reviews and short stories.

Presenter: When did you start writing novels?

Sally Spencer:

Well, he wrote his best works, including Treasure Island, Kidnapped and Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde between 1880 and 1887.

Presenter: Was he living in Britain during this time?

Sally Spencer:

Yes. He lived in Britain until 1887, when his father died. Later, Stevenson and his wife sailed to the South Seas and visited the island of Samoa. The climate there was good for Stevenson's health and they liked it so much that they decided to live there permanently.

Presenter: Did he ever go back to Scotland?

Sally Spencer: No, he didn't. He stayed in Samoa and continued writing until he died in 1894

Presenter: Thank you, Sally. I must admit, I found Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde even more exciting than Treasure Island . When my son has read them both , I will ask him if he agrees.



Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde takes place in London in the nineteenth century. Dr. Henry Jekyll, a respected scientist, is doing research into human nature. He believes that human beings have a good and evil side and that these sides are always in conflict. Dr. Jekyll's colleagues disagree with his ideas and disapprove of his research. So Dr. Jekyll starts doing secret experiments on himself to prove his ideas. He takes special medicine which changes not only his character, but also his appearance. For a short time after he takes the medicine, he becomes Mr. Hyde, an evil man who looks frightening, has a violent personality and commits terrible crimes.

Later, friends think something strange is happening when Dr. Jekyll rewrites his will, leaving everything to Mr. Hyde, a man they do not know. They worry more when the police start asking questions about Mr. Hyde. Who is this stranger who is never seen at the same time as Dr. Jekyll? They think that Dr. Jekyll may be protecting Hyde from the police, or that Mr. Hyde is blackmailing Dr. Jekyll.

Dr. Jekyll has now proved that human nature is both good and evil, but soon he starts to enjoy being Mr. Hyde. He changes into Mr. Hyde more often and finds it more difficult to change back into Mr. Jekyll.

Eventually Dr. Jekyll changes into Mr. Hyde without taking any medicine and finds he cannot change back again. This means that he cannot leave his house, because someone might see him and he might be arrested. The story ends badly for "both" characters.

Key Vocabulary

admit	يعترف / يقر	blackmail	يبتز / ابتزاز
biography	سيرة حياة شخص	colleague	زميل عمل
knock	يطرق / طرقة	commit	يرتكب
permanently	بصفة دائمة	crime	جريمة
profession	مهنة	human nature	الطبيعة البشرية
recuperate	يتعافى / يستجم	in conflict	فى حالة صراع
respectable	محترم	personality	شخصية
appearance	مظهر	will	وصية / ارادة

Vocabulary

illness	مرض	disagreement	خلاف / عدم اتفاق
injury	اصابة	legal	شرعى
socially	اجتماعيا	document	وثيقة / مستند
acceptable	مقبول	human beings	البشر
morally	أخلاقيا	the evil side	الجانب الشرير
complain	يشكو	the good side	الجانب الخير
complaint	شكوى	violent	عنيف
guess	يخمن	violence	العنف
guest	ضيف	eventually	فى النهاية
best-seller	كتاب يحقق أعلى نسبة مبيعات	recognize	يتعرف على

01000453264

01287277089

disappointed	محبط	demand	يطلب / طلب
immediately	فى الحال	criminal	مجرم / اجرامى
relaxing	مريح	friendly	ودود
honest	أمين	helpful	متعاون / مفيد
honesty	الأمانة	match	يلائم (المقاس)
changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس	trust	ثقة / يثق
appointment	موعد	directions	اتجاهات
threaten	يهدد	control	يتحكم فى
illegal	غير شرعى	a fortnight	أسبوعان
behaviour	سلوك	personally	شخصيا
faults	أخطاء	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
qualities	صفات	treasure	كنز
character	شخصية	essay	مقال
title	عنوان	serious crime	جريمة خطيرة
entitled	بعنوان	specifically	على وجه التحديد
property	ملكية	review	مقال نقدي / عرض (كتاب / فيلم)
strange	غريب	target	هدف
stranger	شخص غريب	explain	يشرح / يفسر
presenter	مقدم برامج	explanation	شرح / تفسير
medical profession	مهنة الطب	patience	الصبر
modernize	يحدث (يجعله حديثا)	rate	معدل / نسبة
consumption	الاستهلاك	food security	الامن الغذائى
cultivable land	أرض صالحة للزراعة	invade	يغزو

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

attract attention	يجذب الانتباه	tell secrets	يفشى الأسرار
get better	يتحسن	do research into / on	يجرى أبحاث على
associate ... with	يربط ... بـ	disapprove of	لا يوافق على
The light is on	النور مضاء	approve of	يوافق على / يستحسن
The light is off	النور غير مضاء	do experiments on	يجرى تجارب على
go to sleep	يذهب للنوم	believe in	يؤمن بـ
knock on (at) the door	يطرق على الباب	kind to	عطوف على
go in	يدخل	look your best	تبدو فى أجمل صورة
live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة	take place	يحدث
belong to	يخص / ينتمالى	make medicine	يعمل دواء
go back to	يعود الى	take medicine	يأخذ دواء
under control	تحت السيطرة	come shopping	يأتيللتسوق
have interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ	try out	يقيس (ملابس)
behave towards	يتصرف نحو	be committed to	يكون ملتزما بـ
worn out	مرهق	in different directions	فى اتجاهات مختلفة

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word الكلمة		Antonym العكس	
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
helpful	متعاون	helpless	غير نافع
admit	يقبل / يقر / يعترف	deny	ينكر
permanent	دائم	temporary	مؤقت

01000453264 01287277089

evil	شرير	good	خير
approve	يوافق / يستحسن	disapprove	لا يوافق
respect	احترام	disrespect	عدم احترام
natural	طبيعى	artificial	صناعى

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة	Adverb ظرف
recuperate يستجم	recuperation استجمام		
	biography سيرة حياة شخص	biographical متعلق بسيرة شخص	
admit يعترف / يقر	admission اعتراف / قبول		
respect يحترم	respect احترام	respected محترم respectable محترم	
	profession مهنة	professional مهنى	professionally بطريقة مهنية
		permanent دائم	permanently بشكل دائم

Definitionsتعريفات

Admit يعترف / يقر	agree or say that something is true, although you do not want to
biography كتاب سيرة شخص	a book about a person's life
Knock يطرق	hit a door with your hand in order to attract someone's attention
Permanently بشكل دائم	for all future time, or for a very long time
Profession مهنة	a job that needs special education and training
Recuperate يستجم	to spend time getting better after an illness, injury, etc.
Respectable محترم جدير بالاحترام	behaving in a way that people think is socially acceptable or morally right
Appearance مظهر	The way someone looks to other people
Blackmail يبتز	to make someone pay you money or do what you want by threatening to tell secrets about them
Colleague زميل	A person you work with
Commit a crime يرتكب جريمة	do something illegal
Human nature الطبيعة الشرية	behaviour, faults qualities. etc. that are typical of ordinary people
In conflict فى حالة صراع	a situation of disagreement or fighting between people or groups or ideas
Personality شخصية	someone's character, especially the way they behave towards other people
Will وصية	a legal document in which you say who you want to give your money and property to after you die

Confusable Words

work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقها أداة)

01000453264
01287277089

job	وظيفة / عمل (اسم يعد و يجمع و تشير الى عمل منتظم لكسب المال)
profession	مهنة أو عمل يتطلب قدرا كبيرا من التدريب والتعليم مثل الطب والمحاماة والتدريس
career	المستقبل الوظيفي / الفترة التي يقضيها الشخص في وظيفة معينة

Ex: It takes a lot of **work** to build a house.
Mr. Mark leaves **work** at two o'clock every day.
It's very difficult to find **a job** at the moment
He left the teaching **profession** to set up his own business.
He has a long **career** in journalism. الصحافة

biography	سيرة حياة شخص (بقلم شخص آخر)
autobiography	سيرة ذاتية (بقلم الشخص نفسه)

Ex: He wrote a **biography** of William Shakespeare.
The TV series "Al Ayam" was based on the **autobiography** of Taha Hussein.

respected	يحظى بالاحترام و الاعجاب بسبب عمله أو انجازاته
Respectable	محترم (يتصرف بطريقة مقبولة اجتماعيا و أخلاقيا)
Respectful	يظهر الاحترام لـ

Ex: Dr Magdi Yacoub is a **respected** heart surgeon.
She is a **respectable** young woman from a good family
We should be **respectful** towards elderly people.

human	بشرى / انسانى	humane	عطوف

Ex: The **human** body is composed of about 60% water.
The **humane** way of dealing with a suffering animal is to kill it quickly.

special	خاص (يتميز عن غيره)
private	خاص (يمتلكه أو يستخدمه شخص أو مجموعة)

Ex: **special** occasion مناسبة / train / clothes / care رعاية / friend
private car / school / letter / life / hospital / visit

Language Notes

admit + v. + ing	يعترف / يقر / يقبل	admit + جملة	يعترف / يقر / يقبل

Ex: They admitted stealing the money.
They admitted that they had stolen the money.

suggest + v. + ing يقترح	suggest + فاعل + مصدر / should + مصدر يقترح

Ex: Tom suggested going to the club.
Tom suggested we go to the club.
Tom suggested we should go to the club.

would rather + مصدر	يفضل	Would prefer + to + مصدر	يفضل

Ex: I'd rather have dinner now.
I'd prefer to have dinner now.

would rather + مصدر .... than + مصدر	يفضل ...... على
would rather + مصدر / اسم .... than + اسم	يفضل ...... على

Ex: I'd rather go to the cinema than watch TV.
I'd rather have coffee than tea.

prefer + v. + ing / اسم .... to + v. + ing / اسم	يفضل ...... على
(would) prefer + to + مصدر .... rather than + مصدر	يفضل ...... على

01000453264 01287277089

Ex: I prefer driving to traveling by train.
I prefer tea to coffee.
I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

It's time + to + مصدر	لقد حان وقت
It's time for + اسم	لقد حان وقت
It's time + فاعل + ماضى بسيط	لقد حان وقت

Ex: It's time to go to school.
It's time for school.
It's time we went to school.

make + مفعول + مصدر	يجعل / يجبر

Ex: The medicine made him do terrible things.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1- Someone suggests watching a film but you have an exam.
2 – Your friend has pain in his back.
3 – Your friend suggests playing video games, you don't like the idea.
4 – Your brother stays up all night.
5.A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend. Suggest the beach.
6.A friend doesn't want to go to the beach, but suggests the swimming pool. You are quite happy with his suggestions.
7.A friend suggests going t the cinema in your town tomorrow. You are not sure.
8.You advise a friend of yours not to eat too much.
9.Your brother stays up all night.
10.Your friend has pain in his back.
11.Your friend suggests playing video games, you don't like the idea.
12.You're doing a project on wildlife. Ask a friend of yours for more information.
13.You suggest spending the weekend in Luxor.
14.Your friend suggests going to a swimming pool, you like the idea.
15.You friend suggests that you join a book club, but you want to join a sports club.
16.You offer to help an old man to cross the street.

2-Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A: Passport and tickets, please. B: Here you are.
A: Smoking or non-smoking? B: Non-smoking, please.
A: Thank you. I've given you a window seat 20B,Here's your boarding card.
Place: …… - Speaker A:…………….. - Speaker B: …………. - Function: ……………………

2- A: May I have your order, sir? B: - Yes, I'd like some fish, please.
A:- How would you like it? B: - Fried, please.
Place: …… - Speaker A:…………….. - Speaker B: …………. - Function: ……………………

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1) As I was going to bed, I ……..that my son's bedroom light was still on.

a- saw	**b-was seeing**	**c- see**	**d-had seen**

2) When I knocked on the door and went in, my son …………….in bed.

a-was reading	**b- read**	**c-am reading**	**d-was reading**

3) I complained that it was …..late and that it was time for him to go to sleep.

a- quite	**b- quiet**	**c-quit**	**d- rather**

4) My son wouldn't be able to sleep until he……………….. it.

a-has finished	**b-'d finished**	**c-finished**	**d- finishes**

01000453264 01287277089

5) My guest is Sally Spencer, who's writing a ……………… of Stevenson.

a-autobiography	**b- story**	**c- novel**	**s-biography**

6) Treasure Island was written in 1883 and has been a ……..ever since.

a-bookseller	**b- best sale**	**c- bestseller**	**d-best sales**

7) The ………….., Robert Louis Stevenson, was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1850.

a-author	**b-authority**	**c- authors**	**d- authorite**

8) As a child, he had ……………. problems and spent a lot of time in bed.

a-wealth	**b-health**	**c-filthy**	**d- healthy**

9) In 1867 he went to Edinburgh University to study ……………………

a-engineering	**b-medicine**	**c- law**	**d- art**

10)He was more interested in………….. as he wanted to be a writer.

a- literate	**b- literary**	**c- literature**	**d- litter**

11)His father was disappointed because he wanted his son to have a respectable…………

a- profession	**b- trade**	**c- job**	**d- career**

12)He wanted him to be an engineer ………..him.

a-as	**b- like as**	**c- the same**	**d- like**

13)In 1873 was very ill and his doctor told him he should go abroad to…………………..

a- heal	**b- cure**	**c- recuperate**	**d- recover**

14)He went to the south of France, where he started to write essays ………..and short stories.

a- reviews	**b- views**	**c- visions**	**d- revisions**

15)He wrote his best works, ………….Treasure Island, Kidnapped and Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde between 1880 and 1887.

a- includes	**b- to include**	**c- including**	**d- included**

16)When his father died. Later, Stevenson and his wife …… to the South Seas and visited the island of Samoa.

a- sail	**b- sails**	**c- sailed**	**d- had sailed**

17) The climate there was good ……Stevenson's health.

a- for	**b-at**	**c- to**	**d- with**

18)I must……………, I found Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde even more exciting than Treasure Island.

a- confess	**b- reveal**	**c- disclose**	**d- admit**

S.B Exercise

19)Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde takes ……in London in the nineteenth century.

a- place	**b- part**	**c- up**	**d- a part**

20)Dr. Henry Jekyll, a …….scientist, is doing research into human nature.

a- respectable	**b- respectful**	**c- respected**	**d-respectless**

21)He believes that human beings have a good and evil side and that these sides are always …….

a- conflicting	**b- in conflict.**	**c- conflicted**	**d-being conflicted**

22)Dr. Jekyll's ……disagree with his ideas and disapprove of his research.

a- colleagues	**b- classmates**	**c- fellows**	**d- mates**

23)Dr. Jekyll starts doing secret experiments….himself to prove his ideas.

a- in	**b- into**	**c- on**	**d-over**

24)He takes special medicine which changes not only his character, but also his…………

a- appearing	**b- disappearance**	**c-disappear**	**d- appearance**

01000453264 01287277089

25)He becomes Mr. Hyde, an evil man who looks frightening, has a violent personality and ……………….terrible crimes.

a- does	**b- makes**	**c commits**	**d- comments**

26)Dr. Jekyll rewrites his……, leaving everything to Mr. Hyde, a man they do not know.

a- well	**b- will**	**c- willing**	**d- wellness**

27)They think that Dr. Jekyll may be protecting Hyde from the police, or that Mr. Hyde is ………………………Dr. Jekyll.

a-black market	**b- blacklist**	**c- blackmailing**	**d- black mail**

28)Dr. Jekyll has now proved that human nature is both good and ……, but soon he starts to enjoy being Mr. Hyde.

a- envy	**b- evil**	**c- envious**	**d- vicious**

29)He changes into Mr. Hyde more often and finds it more difficult to ………Dr. Jekyll.

a-change back into	**b-change into**	**c- turn into**	**d- turn on**

W.B Exercise

222. My brother went on holiday to Aswan. Now he is decided to live there ……….. .
a- permanent **b- always** **c- continuous** **d- permanently**

223. I thought the test would be easy , but I must ……..I am finding it quite difficult .
a- confess **b- admit** **c- decree** **d- certify**

224. Someone ……….on the door late last night , but I didn't open it.
a- knock **b- hit** **c- banged** **d- knocked**

225. Doctors and nurses belong to the medical ……………. .
a- career **b- job** **c- trade** **d- profession**

226. All my friends come from very …………………..families.
a- respect **b- respectable** **c- respects** **d- disrespectable**

227. My grandfather …………………..at the moment after a long illness.
a- is healing **b- is curing** **c- is recuperating** **d- is recovering**

228. I am reading a new ……………….of William Shakespeare .he had a very interesting life
a- biography **b- novel** **c- story** **d- tale**

229. Ali wasn't badly injured in the accident , but his ………..took longer than we thought .
a- healing **b- recuperation** **c- recover** **d- recuperate**

230. I have worked in a lot of different places.Now I would like a more …job.
a- permanent **b- permanently** **c- temporary** **d- temporarily**

231. You can find ……….information about many writers on the internet .
a- biography **b- biographical** **c- auto-biography** **d-graph**

232. When he said sorry , it was an ……….that he had been wrong.
a- admittance **b- admission** **c- admit table** **d- admit**

233. I ……………people who are honest and work hard.
a- respectable **c- respectful** **c- respect** **d- respect less**

234. If you are a doctor, it is very important to behave……….towards your patents.
a- Professional **b- profession** **c- professionally** **d- profess**

235. A person you work with you is a ………………….. .
a- classmate **b- colleague** **c- fellow** **d- mate**

236. …………..is the way someone looks to other people.
a- personality **b- person** **c- personal** **d- Appearance**

237. We say a person ………………..a crime.
a- does **b- makes** **c- commits** **d- commends**

238. …………………is the behaviour or qualities typical of ordinary people.
a- human race **b- human being** **c- human nature** **d-human**

239. Someone's character, the way someone behaves towards others is…..
a- personality **b- appearance** **c- person** **d- personal**

240. A legal document saying what should happen to someone's money and things after they die is a …………. .

01000453264 01287277089

a- well **b- wellness** **c- willing** **d- will**

241. ....is a situation of disagreement or fighting between people or groups.

a- war **b- Conflict** **c- ease** **d- dispute**

242. She has a very nice ....She is kind to everyone she meets.

a- personality **b- personal** **c- personally** **d- personnel**

243. People who ....serious crimes should be sent to prison

a- do **b- commit** **c- make** **d- have**

244. He left everything to his son in his ....

a- will **b- well** **c- certification** **d- document**

245. When my brother started his new job , all his ....were friendly and helpful.

a- fellows **b- colleagues** **c- classmates** **d- mates**

246. If you are going for a job interview , your ....is important .You must look your best.

a- sight **B vision** **c- appearance** **d- disappearance**

247. Dr.Jekll and Mr Hyde ....place in London.

a- makes **b- takes** **c- does** **d- has**

248. Dr.Jekll was ....research into human nature.

a- doing **b- making** **c- having** **d- carrying**

249. He ....a special medicine for himself.

a- did **b- made** **c- took** **d- had**

250. When he ....the medicine , he changed into Mr. Hyde

a- put **b- had** **c- took** **d- did**

251. The medicine ....him do terrible things.

a- made **b- took** **c- forced** **d- allowed**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

-1

1- After working in many places, he got a temporary job in a bank.
2- At first he denied stealing the money but he later indebted it.
3 -Dr Jekyll makes place in London.
4 -Famous people often wrote their novels.
5 -He couldn't decide which one he liked good.
6- He felled in his attempt to break the record.
7 -He is curing after a long time illness.
8 -He locked on the door before he entered.
9 -He started making experiments on himself.
10 -He used to complain to pain in heart.
11 -He was do research into human nature.
12 -He was sent to prison because he had connected murder.
13 -He wrote his biography before he died.
14 -I look forward to see that play.
15 -I need to draw some money out of my discount.
16 -I thought he is a good man but suddenly he exchanged into an evil man
17 -It is time thinking about buying a house.
18 -It's only human creature to want the best for your children.
19 -Many people in Egypt still wear conditional clothes.
20 -May I introduce one of my colleges at the bank?
21 -Sara has used to working late at the office.
22 -She allowed me using her computer.
23 -She has a very nice person. Everyone likes her.
24 -She left me some money in her wool.
25 -She spent a month in the country cooperating from the operation.
26 -She was the last student arrives at school.
27 -She'd rather watching TV than go to the cinema.

01000453264 01287277089

28 -Smoking is likely to damage your health parentally.
29 -The boy took the right medicine, so he died.
30 -The criminal admitted that he killed the old man for his money.
31 -The government gives private care to setting up new projects.
32 -The government is trying to contract more tourists to visit Egypt.
33 -The information in this report is based on a spray completed by 2000 students.
34 -There was a lot of infect between him and his father.
35 -They changed the whole annoyance of the house just by painting.
36 -We all disagree to his ideas as they are fruitless.
37- We should restrict the environment and not pollute it.

6-Translate into Arabic:

Water will have become one of our most serious problems. Demand for water will increase ten1 times between now and 2050, and there could be serious shortages. Water could be the cause of war if we do not act now.

2- Dr. Jekyll has now proved that human nature is both good and evil, but soon he starts to enjoy being Mr. Hyde. He changes into Mr. Hyde more often and finds it more difficult to change back into Mr. Jekyll.

7-Translate into English:

1 – اعتقد أن الانسان له جانبان ,طيب و شرير و أن هذان الجانبان في صراع دائم .
-2 كان دكتور هنري جيكل عالما محترما يجري ابحاثا في الطبيعة البشرية.

Translate into English:

1- We all have a good and an evil side. These two sides of our personality sometimes pull us in different directions because they are always in conflict. Therefore we have to control our behaviour.
2- Production must go side by side with consumption. We have to modernize our means of production to face the rapid growth of population. The number of people increases every day, so production must increase at the same rate.

Translate into English:

-1 تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتوفير الأمن الغذائى لكل مواطن.
-2 ان غزو الصحراء و تحويلها الى أراضى صالحة للزراعة ضرورى لزيادة الانتاج.

Language Functions

Making Suggestions	Responding to suggestions
How about + v + ing..? ما رأيك فى ..... ؟	I'd go along with that. أوافق على ذلك
What about + v + ing..? ما رأيك فى ..... ؟	That's a good idea. يا لها من فكرة جيدة
Shall we + مصدر ?	I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدا من ذلك
Why don't we / you / they..? لما لا .... ؟	Personally, I'd prefer.. شخصيا أفضل
I'd say .... أود أن أقول	Sorry, I don't agree. اسف. لا أوافق
Let's say .... دعنا نقول	That's what I think هذا هو ما أفكر فيه
We could .... من الممكن أن	I agree. أوافق
	That sounds fine. هذا يبدو رائعا

Examples:

1-A: How often do you think we should go shopping?
B: How about once a month?

01000453264 01287277089

A: Personally, I'd prefer once a week.
2-A: How many people should we invite to the party?
B: I'd say ten at the most.
A: I'd go along with that.
3-A: When would you like to go?
B: What about early evening?
A: That's a good idea.
4-A: What kinds of books should we read?
B: Let's say any kind of fiction.
A: I'm not sure about that. I don't want to read science fiction books.

✍ ***Respond to each of the following situations:***

1- A friend asks you how often you think you should go shopping.
2- A friend asks how many people you should invite you your birthday party.
3- A friend suggests reading any kind of fiction. You don't agree.
4- You suggest traveling in the early morning.
5- A friend suggests going to the club once a month, but you prefer going once a week.

Language Focus

Direct & Indirect Speech

الكلام المباشر و الكلام غير المباشر

هناك طريقتين لاخبار شخص بما فعله شخص اخر و هما:✍

1-Direct speech: الكلام المباشر

فى الكلام المباشر نقدم الكلمات الفعلية التى قيلت و توضع بين علامتى التنصيص كما يلى

- Nabila: What did Ahmed say?
Ali : He said, "I want to be a doctor."

2-Reported speech: الكلام غير المباشر

و هو الكلام المنقول و فيه نغير الكلمات التى قيلت لتتناسب مع الجملة و هناك بعض القواعد التى يجب اتباعها مثل الآزمنة و الضمائر

- Nabila: What did Ahmed say?
Ali : He said that he wanted to be a doctor.

1) Statement
الجملة الخبرية

✍ **خطوات تحويل الجملة من كلام مباشر direct إلى كلام غير مباشر direct:**

1- نحول فعل القول كما يلى:

Direct	Reported	direct	Reported
say to	tell	say	say
says to	tells	says	says
said to	told	said	said

2- نحذف الأقواس و نربط بكلمة thatالتى يمكن الاستغناء عنها
3- نغير الضمائر حسب المعنى
4- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع نغير الضمائر فقط
أما إذا كان فعل القول ماضى نغير الأزمنة كما يلى:

Direct	Reported

01000453264 01287277089

Present simple	مضارع بسيط	Past simple	ماضى بسيط
Present continuous	مضارع مستمر	Past continuous	ماضى مستمر
Present perfect	مضارع تام	Past perfect	ماضى تام
Past simple	ماضى بسيط	Past perfect	ماضى تام
Past continuous	ماضى مستمر	Past perfect cont	ماضى تام مستمر
Present perfect cont	مضارع تام مستمر	Past perfect cont	ماضى تام مستمر

كما يتم تغيير الأفعال الناقصة كما يلى:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
will	would	can	could
shall	should	won't	wouldn't
may	might	must للضرورة	had to
can't	couldn't	must للتأكد	must have + pp

كما نغير أسماء الإشارة و المكان و الكلمات الدالة على الزمن كما يلى:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
this year / month	that year / month	these	those
here	there	now	then / at that time
ago	before	today	that day
tonight	that night	tomorrow	the next (following) day
next year	the following year the year after	yesterday	the day before the previous day
last year	the year before the previous year		

Examples:

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
"It's a busy day," he said.	He said it was a busy day.
"I won't see anyone until I've finished," she said.	She said she wouldn't see anyone until she'd finished.
"I'm taking my brother to the airport," he said.	He said he was taking his brother to the airport.
He said, "I want to be a doctor."	He said that he wanted to be a doctor.
She said, "I worked yesterday."	She said she had worked the day before.
He said to me, "I didn't finish my homework last night."	He told me that he hadn't finished his homework the night before.
The doctor said to the patient, "You must take the tablets for a week."	The doctor told the patient that he must take the tablets for a week.
Jack said, "He must be guilty!"	Jack said that he must have been guilty.

ملاحظات:

1- إذا كان الكلام المباشر عبارة عن حقيقة علمية لا يحدث أى تغيير. و نغير الضمائر فقط فى حالة وجود said a moment ago / just now.

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said, "Water boils when it's heated."	He said water boils when it's heated.
- He said just now, "I'll visit you next week."	He said just now that he'll visit me next week.

01000453264
01287277089

2- عندما يكون الكلام المباشر حقيقى فى لحظة الكلام يمكن أن يظل الزمن فى المضارع أو يتحول الى الماضى.

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
"I'm two metres tall," he said	He said he is two metres tall. He said he was two metres tall.

يتغير الزمن فى الحالة الأولى فقط.if-3 فى حالة قاعدة

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said to me, "I'll buy a car if I have enough money."	He told me that he'd buy a car if he had enough money.

and that / and added that-4 فى حالة وجود جملتين نربطهما بـ

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said, "I can't do my homework today. I'll do it later."	He said that he couldn't do his homework that day and that he'd do it later.

5- يمكن أن نستخدم أفعال أخرى بدلا من say مثل
claim / complain / mention / indicate / assert / agree / promise / admit / explain

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said, "I'm a surgeon."	He claimed he was a surgeon.
She said, "I spent a lot of time in hospital last year."	She complained that she had spent a lot of time in hospital the previous year.
He said, "I won't tell anyone what you said."	He agreed he wouldn't tell anyone what I had said.

6- الأفعال و التعبيرات الآتية تظل كما هى بدون تغيير would / should / could / might
used to/ ought to / would rather / had better / would like / it is time

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said to me, "I'd like to go to the club."	He told me he'd like to go to the club.

7- فى جملة تعبر عن حقيقة أو عرف سائد أو نصيحة فلا تتغير. must اذا جاءت

Direct Statement	Reported Statement
He said to me, "You must obey your parents."	He told me that I must obey my parents.

2) Question الأسئلة

خطوات تحويل السؤال من كلام مباشر direct الى كلام غير مباشر reported:

1- تحول فعل القول كما يلى

Direct	Reported
say / say to	ask
says / says to	asks
said / said to	asked

يمكن أن يبدأ السؤال غير المباشر بأحد التعبيرات الآتية:
I wonder – I don't know – I'd like to know – Could you tell me
He wanted to know – I have no idea

2- نحذف الأقواس و علامة الاستفهام و نربط ب:
إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص.if / whether-أ

01000453264 01287277089

ب- أداة الاستفهام إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بها.
3- نغير الضمائر حسب المعنى.
4- نستخدم الفاعل ثم الفعل مع حذف الفعل المساعد do / does / did.
5- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع نغير الضمائر فقط أما إذا كان فعل القول ماضى نغير الأزمنة و الكلمات الدالة عليها و أسماء الإشارة و المكان.

Examples:

Direct question	Reported question
"What are you doing?" I asked him.	I asked him what he was doing.
"Have you watched the DVD? She asked me.	She asked me if I had watched the DVD.
"Are you going out?" she asked him	She asked him if / whether he was going out.
He said to me, "Will you come soon?"	He asked me if I would come soon.
He said to her, "Do you need any help?"	He asked her if she needed any help.
"Where do you live?"	I wonder where you live.
He said to me, "Why did you leave your last job?"	He asked me why I had left my last job.

ملاحظات:

1- فى حالة وجود سؤال و جملة نربطهما بـ and said that

Direct question	Reported question
He said, "When will you return? I shall be ready to meet you at any time."	He asked when I would return and said that he would be ready to meet me at any time.

2- فى حالة وجود جملة و سؤال نربطهما بـ and asked

Direct question	Reported question
He said to me, "I'll travel tomorrow. When will you travel?"	He told me that he'd travel the next day and asked when I would travel.

3- إذا كان هناك سؤالين نربطهما بـ and .

Direct question	Reported question
My father said, "Why are you late? Did you miss the bus?"	My father asked why I was late and if I had missed the bus.

3) Orders, requests and advice
الطلبات و الأوامر و النصحة

خطوات تحويل الطلب من كلام مباشر direct إلى كلام غير مباشر indirect:

1- نحول said to إلى asked / told / advised / warned / begged .
2- نحذف الأقواس و نربط بـ:
أ- to إذا كان الأمر مثبت
ب- not to إذا كان الأمر منفى.
3- نستخدم المصدر بعد to / not to .
4- إذا كان فعل القول مضارع تتغير الضمائر فقط أما إذا كان فعل القول ماضى نغير الأزمنة و الكلمات الدالة عليها و أسماء الإشارة و المكان.

Examples:

Direct	Reported
He said to me, "Open the door, please."	He asked me to open the door.
He said to me, "Don't play with fire."	He warned me not to play with fire.

01000453264 01287277089

He said to me, "If I were you, I should leave the town at once."	He advised me to leave the town at once.

في حالة وجود جملتين أمر أو طلب نربطهما بـ and .

Direct	Reported
He said, "Study your lessons. Don't neglect them."	He advised me to study my lessons and not to neglect them.

1-Respond to each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend. Suggest the beach.
2- A friend doesn't want to go to the beach, but suggests the swimming pool. You are quite happy with his suggestions.
3- A friend suggests that you join a book club together. You don't want to join a book club, but you like to join a sports club.
4-A friend suggests going t the cinema in your town tomorrow . You are not sure.

S.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

131. I complained that it ....rather late and that it was time for him to go to sleep.
a- is **b -was** **c- will be** **d- is going to be**
132. I said he ....be tired the next day.
a- will **b- would** **c- is going to** **d- can**
133. My son explained that his book ....really exciting.
a- will be **c- is**
b- would **d- was**
134. He said he wouldn't be able to sleep until he ....it.
a- has finished **b- finished** **c- had finished** **d- Have finished**
135. I asked him what.........................
a- he was reading **b- he is reading** **c- was he reading** **d- is he reading**
136. He said that he ....to be a writer..
a- was wanting **b- wants** **c- wanted** **d- will want**
I will ask him if he............
a- agrees **b- agree** **c- would agree** **d- could agree**
137. She promised that she.................... home the next morning.
a- shall be **b- is going to be** **c- will be** **d- would be**
138. He asked me where ....
a- have you been **b- you had been** **c- I had been** **d- you had been**
139. She admitted that her brother.....her with her homework that afternoon.
a- is helping **b- was helping** **c- helps** **d- help**
140. He asked me if I ....reading the book he'd lent you the week before.
a- had finished **b- have finished** **c- finish** **d- will finish**
141. She said they ....them there the following Saturday.
a- were meeting **b- will meet** **c- are going to meet** **d- met**
142. I asked Leila what she.................. to study at the university.
a- is going to hope **b- hopes** **c- was hoping** **d- will hope**
143. I asked a shop assistant if I ....try the shirt on.
a- will **b- could** **c- can** **d- ought to**
144. The assistant said I could and ....me where the changing rooms were.
a- told **b- tells** **c- tell** **d- will tell**

W.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

145. She complained that she ....for more than an hour for her appointment.
a- had waited **b- waited** **c- has waited** **d- would wait**

01000453264 01287277089

146. They promised that they ....us as soon as they arrived.
a- is going to phone b- would phone c- will phone d- will be phoning
147. He admitted that he had arrived late the night..............
a- next b- then c- after d- before
148. She explained that she ....to come and see me the following week.
a- hopes b- was hoping c- hope d- will hope
149. He agreed he would not tell anyone what I...................
a- say b- had said c- have said d- will say
150. He asked me if I ....that his sister had been ill.
a- knew b- know c- will know d- have known
151. We wanted to know what they ....of his idea.
a-think b- thought c- is thinking d- would think

More Exercises

23-Karim ------------Nour if there was sugar in the cup.

a – asked	**b – told**	**c – said**	**d – talked**

24- Samy asked Ali where ----------- that precious stone.

a – had she found	**b – she had found**
c – did she find	**d – she finds**

25-I told the professor I --------------- the following lecture.

a – didn't attend	**b – wouldn't attend**
c – won't attend	**d – hadn't attended**

26-They wanted to know ------------------ music.

a – if I played	**b – did I play**	**c – do I play**	**d – that I play**

27-He said just now that he -------- a new car next month.

a – would buy	**b – will buy**	**c – has bought**	**d – buys.**

28-She asked me where I -------------- then .

a – stay	**b – did stay**	**c – was staying**	**d – am staying**

29-The interviewer asked the professor ------ he had worked at any foreign universities.

a – whether	**b – unless**	**c – that**	**d – whatever**

30-Can you kindly tell me where ----------------------------?

a – is the manager	**b – the manager**	**c – the manager is**	**d – is**

choose1

1-I complained that it ....rather late and that it was time for him to go to sleep.
a- is b -was c- will be d- is going to be
2-I said he ....be tired the next day.
a- will b- would c- is going to d- can
3-My son explained that his book ....really exciting.
a- will be b- would c- is d- was
4-He said he wouldn't be able to sleep until he ....it.
a- has finished b- finished c- had finished d- Have finished
5-I asked him what..........................
a- he was reading b- he is reading c- was he reading d- is he reading
6- He said that he ....to be a writer..
a- was wanting b- wants c- wanted d- will want
7- I will ask him if he............
a- agrees b- agree c- would agree d- could agree
8-She promised that she.................... home the next morning.
a- shall be b- is going to be c- will be d- would be
9- He asked me where.....................
a- have you been b- you had been c- I had been d- you had been
10- She admitted that her brother.....her withher homework that afternoon.
a- is helping b- was helping c- helps d- help
11-He asked me if I ....reading the book he'd lent you the week before.
a- had finished b- have finished c- finish d- will finish

12-She said they ....them there the following Saturday.
a- were meeting b- will meet c- are going to meet d- met
13-I asked Leila what she................. to study at the university.
a- is going to hope b- hopes c- was hoping d- will hope
14- I asked a shop assistant if I ....try the shirt on.
a- will b- could c- can d- ought to
15-The assistant said I could and ....me where the changing rooms were.
a- told b- tells c- tell d- will tell
16-She complained that she ....for more than an hour for her appointment.
a- had waited b- waited c- has waited d- would wait
17-They promised that they ....us as soon as they arrived.
a- is going to phone b- would phone c- will phone d- will be phoning
18-He admitted that he had arrived late the night...............
a- next b- then c- after d- before
19-She explained that she ....to come and see me the following week.
a- hopes b- was hoping c- hope d- will hope
20- He agreed he would not tell anyone what I....................
a- say b- had said c- have said d- will say
21-He asked me if I ....that his sister had been ill.
a- knew b- know c- will know d- have known
22-We wanted to know what they ....of his idea.
a-think b- thought c- is thinking d- would think
23- Karim ------------Nour if there was sugar in the cup.
a – asked b – told c – said d – talked
24-Samy asked Ali where ----------- that precious stone.
a – had she found b – she had found c – did she find d – she finds
25- I told the professor I --------------- the following lecture.
a – didn't attend b – wouldn't attend c – won't attend d – hadn't attended
26-He said just now that he -------- a new car next month.
a – would buy b – will buy c – has bought d – buys.
27-She asked me where I -------------- then.
a – stay b – did stay c – was staying d – am staying
28-The interviewer asked the professor ------ he had worked at any foreign universities.
a – whether b – unless c – that d – whatever
29- (Can you kindly tell me where?-----------------------------
a – is the manager b – the manager c – the manager is d – is

<u>Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly</u>:
1.He admitted that he robs the house the night before.
2.He advised me looking for another job.
3.He apologized not to do the job well.
4.He asked me why didn't I lock the door the night before.
5.He denied to forge the cheque.
6.He denied to help the spy.
7.He explained that he loses his way in the desert a few weeks earlier.
8.He said metals are contacting when they are cooled.
9.He said that she is going to learn to drive.
10 .He said," Where do you go to school? " by bus.
11 .He says that he was taking his brother to the airport.
12 .He says water evaporated if it is boiled.
13 .He told that it was a busy day.

14 .He wondered how long did I stay in Paris the previous year.
15 .I asked him what he is doing.
16 .John asked where did I buy my shirt from.
17 .Nadia asks Nahla if she can phone her to tell her what she said.
18 .Nadia wanted to know if I am doing something interesting at the weekend.
19 .Nadia wanted to know if I would like to come shopping with him.
20 .Nahla explained that she will have to ask her mother.
21 .Nahla promised that she would phone her this evening.
22 .She admitted that she didn't had any plans.
23 .She asked me weather I had watched the DVD.
24 .She promised that she will help me soon.
25 .She said just now that he had watched TV.
26 .She told me to have closed the window.
27 .They complained that they are treated badly by the shop owner the previous day.

Test on Unit 8

1- Respond to the following situations:

1-A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend.
2-The same friend does not want to go to the beach, but suggests the swimming pool.
3-A friend suggests that you join a book club together., but you would like to join a sports club.
4-A friend suggests going to the cinema in your town tomorrow. You are not sure.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1-A: I'd like two tickets to Aswan, please.
B: Single or return?
A: Single, please.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

2-A: May I have a look inside your bag?
B: Anything wrong?
A: No, just security measures before boarding the plane.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

1-He wrote a famous (geography – photography – orthography – biography) of President Eisenhower.
2-You are a (respectful – respect – respectable – respecting) young man. You should not behave like that.
3-The good side and the evil side in man are always in (harmony – conflict – agreement – hatred).
4-This scientist is doing (search – research – experiment – experience) into human nature.
5-They used the photographs to (blackmail – blacklist – blackboard – black market) him.
6-We should never judge by (abundances – absences – appearances – alliances).
7-After many attempts, she (eventually – additionally – analytically – artistically) managed to get promotion.
8-His colleagues disapproved (on – with - of – at) his research.

01000453264
01287277089

9-I complained that it (was – is – is being – has been) rather late and that it was time for him to go to sleep.
10-I said he (was going to – will – may – shall) retire the following year.
11-My son (asked – wondered – inquired – explained) that his book was really exciting.
12-I asked him what (was he reading – has he been reading - he was reading – is he reading).
13-She promised that she (will - would – can – shall) be home the next morning.
14-I asked Leila what (she was hoping – was she hoping – did she hope – will she hope) to study at university.
15- The doctor told me (stay – staying - to stay – had stayed) in bed for a few days.
16-She asked me (not telling - not to tell – tell not – told) anybody what had had happened.

<u>4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:</u>
1-She said they are meeting them there the following Saturday.
2-He asked me whether I finish reading the book he had lent me the week before.
3-Peter wondered how much had I paid for the suit.
4-His experiments showed that he was wrong about human feature.
5-He has a violent personality and contacts terrible crimes.
6-He wrote his bill, leaving everything to his grandson.

<u>5- Read the passage then answer the questions: (August, 2006)</u>

Charles was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in a small caravan where there is only second hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops.
This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiness. "A few years ago," says Charles, "I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities. When he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas.
Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. He decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? "No, I'm much happier now. I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything – no way."

<u>A) Answer the following questions:</u>
1.Would you like to be a millionaire? Why? Why not?
2.Compare Charles' life in the past to his life now.
3.What does the underlined word it refer to?

<u>B.Choose the correct answer:</u>
4-According to the text, Charles has ---------------------.
a) a family b) a huge house c) everything in the world d) only a little money
5-Now Charles is very happy because---------------------.
a) he is a millionaire b) he has no money
c) he misses nothing d) he lives in a small caravan

<u>6- Read the passage then answer the questions:</u>

Zoo officials say they are concerned about animals. However, most zoos remain collections of interesting items rather than protective habitats. Zoos teach people that

it is acceptable to keep animals in captivity – bored, lonely and far from their natural homes.

Zoos claim to educate people and save endangered species, but visitors leave zoos without having learnt anything meaningful about their natural behaviour, intelligence or beauty.

Most zoo enclosures are quite small, and most labels only mention the name of the species, its diet and natural home. The animals' normal behaviour is seldom observed because zoos rarely take care of the animals' natural needs.

Answer the following questions:

1-Why do you think animals suffer in zoos?

2-Where can people learn about animals' normal behaviour?

3-Find words in the passage which mean: a) cages b) the natural home of an animal

Choose the correct answer:

4-Zoos ------------- take care of the animals' natural needs.
a) often b) usually c) always d) hardly

5-Zoo visitors learn ----------------- about the animals' natural behaviour.
a) a lot b) almost nothing c) much d) many

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (August, 2006)
"What should be done for children's welfare?"

9- A)Translate into Arabic: (August, 2006)

Water will have become one of our most serious problems. Demand for water will increase ten times between now and 2050, and there could be serious shortages. Water could be the cause of war if we do not act now.

B) Translate into English:

1-يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزة الكمبيوتر في مدارسهم وسيكون لذلك أثره العظيم في تقدم مصر.

2-يعتقد بعض العلماء أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا هو الحل الوحيد لمشكلة نقص الغذاء في الدول النامية.

01000453264 01287277089

Unit 9: The power of nature



Tape script

Amena: We've been learning that some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out permanently during an eclipse.
Professor: Really? Well, that couldn't happen, of course. But people are right to think that the sun is very important.
Shahd: Yes, that's right. If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on Earth, would there?
Professor: Definitely not! Human beings have always understood this,
Shahd: So, what exactly is the Sun, Professor?
Professor: It's a giant ball of hot gasses. Which is 150 million kilometres from the Earth.
Amena: Wow! As far as that! Do we know how hot it is? '
Professor: Yes; we do have this information. The surface of the sun is about 6,000 degrees centigrade, but if you took the temperature at the centre of the sun , you'd find it was more like 15 million degrees.
Shahd: That is incredible.
Professor: The sun gives us heat and light, which we need, but it also gives out x-rays and ultraviolet rays, which can be very harmful to life.
Shahd: Really? Can you explain why they don't harm us, then?
Professor: I'll try and explain. Most of these rays are absorbed in the atmosphere, so they aren't able to affect us. But I ought to warn you about one very important thing.
Shahd: ' What's that? '
Professor: The sun is incredibly strong and you should never look straight at it. If you look at the sun, you'll damage your sight.
Shahd:' Is it OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
"**Professor:** No, I'm afraid its not. A friend of mine thought that, but he now has problems with his eyes. If he hadn't looked at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his Sight. Just remember. Never look at the sun.

Reading	**Unusual Weather**	

For most people, the word *weather* means the sun, rain, wind or snow. If you live in southern Europe or Africa, you know that temperatures are higher and there is less rain than if you live in northern Europe or Canada. It is unusual for a weather forecast to surprise us.
However, strange weather can occur all over the world. For example, people have seen giant pieces of ice falling from the sky. And what would you think if you saw a ball of light as big as a football on a plane, or floating
through your home? Weather experts call these balls *ball lightning.*
Some storms are very unusual and may cause terrible damage. The English town of Dunwich was once an important port, but in the fourteenth century, high waves and violent storms hit the area and most of the town disappeared beneath the sea. The worst storm in Britain killed more than 8,000 people in 1703. The worst flood in history was in 1887 in China when the Yellow River flooded and killed around a million people.
Unusual weather is becoming more common, with very high or low temperatures and very heavy rainfall all over the world. This causes serious droughts in some places and floods in others. However, this is not a modern
phenomenon: in Europe in the eighteenth century, there was a Little Ice Age when rivers like the River Thames in England froze. What will happen to our weather in the future? No one knows, but one day 'unusual' weather may not be unusual any more.

01000453264 01287277089

Key Vocabulary

geyser	نبع ماء حار / سخان مياه	cause	سبب
volcano	بركان	drought	الجفاف
electric storm	عاصفة كهربية	lightning	البرق
absorb	يمتص	northern	شمالى
eclipse	كسوف / خسوف	occur	يحدث / يقع
harmful	ضار	phenomenon	ظاهرة
sight	منظر / البصر	rainfall	سقوط الامطار
ultraviolet rays	أشعة فوق بنفسجية	southern	جنوبى

Vocabulary

wave	موجة	storm chaser	مطارد الرياح
wavy	متموج	erupt	يثور (البركان)
heat wave	موجة حارة	eruption	ثورة البركان
powers of nature	قوى الطبيعة	landscape	منظر طبيعى
solar eclipse	كسوف الشمس	blow	تهب / ينفخ
lunar eclipse	خسوف القمر	planet	كوكب
nature	الطبيعة	star	نجم
surfing	التزلج على الماء	galaxy	مجرة
skin	جلد	meteorite	نيزك / شهاب
giant	ضخم / عملاق	comet	مُذَنَب
temperature	درجة الحرارة	clear night	ليلة صافية
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى	definitely	بالتأكيد
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	a flash of lightning	وميض البرق
earthquake	الزلازل	a clap of thunder	قصف الرعد
tide	المد و الجزر	flood	يفيض / فيضان
degree centigrade	درجة مئوية	float	يطفو
safely	بأمان	collect data	يجمع معلومات
sunny	مشمس	evidence	دليل
stormy	عاصف	scientific evidence	دليل علمى
rainy	ممطر	shadow	ظل
windy	عاصف / ملئ بالرياح	distance	مسافة / بعد
weather forecast	النشرة الجوية	human beings	البشر
weather experts	خبراء الطقس	harmful rays	أشعة ضارة
extreme weather	طقس متطرف	ball lightning	برق على شكل كرة
sand storm	عاصفة رملية	average wind speed	متوسط سرعة الرياح
snow storm	عاصفة ثلجية	beneath	تحت
Little Ice Age	العصر الجليدى الأصغر	astronomy	علم الفلك
Antarctica	منطقة القطب الجنوبى	chase	يطارد
around	حوالى	common	شائع / معروف
tornado	زوبعة	follow	يتبع
hurricane	اعصار	exist	يوجد
affect (v)	يؤثر على	x-rays	أشعة اكس
effect (n)	تأثير	harm	يضر / يؤذى
warn	يحذر	incredibly	بصورة لا تصدق
damage	يتلف / يدمر	ability	قدرة
economy	اقتصاد	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
economics	علم الاقتصاد	clear	صافى / واضح

01000453264

01287277089

block	يحجب / يعوق	inform	يخبر

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

high waves	أمواج عالية	in a northerly direction	فى اتجاه الشمال
high temperature	درجة حرارة عالية	in a westerly position	فى اتجاه الغرب
serious damage	دمار خطير	in a easterly position	فى اتجاه الشرق
heavy rain	مطر غزير	block out / off	يحجب
strong wind	رياح عاتية	go dark	يظلم
violent storm	عاصفة عنيفة	get burnt	يحترق
cause damage to	يسبب دمار لـ	northern Europe	شرق أوربا
take in	يمتص	give out	يطلق
damaging to	ضار لـ	go out	يطفى (النور)
harmful to	ضار لـ	lift him off his feet	ترفعه من على الأرض
warn about	يحذر من	put people in danger	يعرض الناس للخطر
life on earth	الحياة على الأرض	look straight at	ينظر مباشرة الى
at the sight of	عند رؤية	stay on the surface	يظل على السطح
catch sight of	يلمح	have problems with	لديه مشاكل فى
come into sight	يظهر	on a clear night	فى ليلة صافية
in a southerly direction	فى اتجاه الجنوب	fall on the earth	يسقط على الأرض

Antonyms كلمات و عكسها

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
ability	قدرة	inability	عدم القدرة
harmful	ضار	harmless	غير ضار
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسئ فهم
able	قادر	unable	غير قادر
common	شائع	uncommon	غير شائع
cruel	قاسى	kind	عطوف
strange	غريب	ordinary	عادى
incredible	خيالى	believable	يمكن تصديقه
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
high	عالى	low	منخفض
extreme	متطرف	mild	معتدل

Derivatives المشتقات

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة	Adverb ظرف
absorb يمتص	absorption امتصاص	absorbent ماص	
harm يضر	harm ضرر	harmful ضار	
heat يسخن	heat حرارة	hot حار / ساخن	
	volcano بركان	volcanic بركانى	
	north شمال	northern شمالى	
occur يحدث / يقع	occurrence حدوث		
	phenomenon	phenomenal غير عادى / استثنائى	phenomenally بشكل غير عادى
	south جنوب	southern جنوبى	
	electricity كهرباء	electric كهربى	
sight يبصر / يرى	sight البصر / مشهد	sighted مبصر	
economize يقتصد	economy اقتصاد	economic اقتصادى	

01000453264 01287277089

		economical موفر	

Definitionsتعريفات

Absorb يمتص	if something absorbs liquid, heat, etc., it takes in the liquid, heat, etc., through its surface
Eclipse (n) كسوف الشمس خسوف القمر	when the sun or the moon seems to disappear, because one of them is passing between the other one and the Earth
Harmful ضار	causing harm
Geyser نبع ماء	a hole in the earth from which hot water and steam can suddenly rise
Sight (n) البصر	the ability to see
Ultraviolet rays أشعة فوق بنفسجية	light which can make people's skin become darker
Cause (v) يسبب	to make something happen
Drought الجفاف	a long period فترة of dry weather when there is not enough water
Lightning (n) البرق	a bright flash of electrical light in the sky during a storm
Northern شمالى	in or from the north part of a country or area
Occur يحدث / يقع	to happen, especially without being planned first
Phenomenon ظاهرة	something that happens or exists, especially something that is unusual or difficult to understand
Rainfall سقوط الأمطار	the amount of rain that falls on an area in a particular period فترة of time
Southern جنوبى	in or from the south part of a country or area

Confusable Words

drought الجفاف	draught تيار هواء بارد

Ex: **Drought** cause serious damage to crops in many countries in Africa.
Can you shut the door? There's a **draught** in here.

Economic اقتصادى (ترتبط بالتجارة و الصناعة)	economical(الوقت و الجهد و المال) مدبر/موفر

Ex: Our **economic** situation has improved recently.
What's the most **economical** way of heating this building?

sight	البَصَر / مَشهَد (شئ محدد يمكن رؤيته)
sights	معالم جديرة بالمشاهدة
view	منظر طبيعى ثابت (ما يمكن رؤيته من مكان معين)

Ex: His **sight** was completely restored by the operation.
A man carrying a donkey is a strange **sight**.
We went to Rome to see the **sights**.
There's an excellent **view** from our bedroom window.

weather	الطقس (حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة)
whether = if	ما إذا

Ex: What's the **weather** like this morning?
Let me know **whether** you can come or not.

reason for + v. + ing / اسم سبب	cause (v) يسبب
reason why + جملة سبب	cause of (n) سبب

01000453264 01287277089

Ex: I don't know **the reason for his absence**.
I don't know **the reason why he is** absent.
What **caused** the fire?
What was **the cause of** the fire?

wear + مفعول = be dressed in (تستخدم لوصف عادة أو مظهر الشخص)	يلبس / يكون مرتديا
put on + مفعول	يقوم بارتداء
dress = get dressed	يلبس (بدون مفعول)
في حالة وجود مفعول يكون معناه "يساعد شخص على ارتداء الملابس)	
be dressed in = be wearing + مفعول	يكون مرتديا

Ex: When I saw him in the party, he was **wearing** his black suit.
We **wear** heavy clothes in winter.
While I was **putting on** my coat, the phone rang.
Put on your shoes, Ali. We're leaving now.
Women take a long time to **dress** (**get dressed**)
She dresses beautifully, doesn't she?
Could you **dress** the children for me?

Language Notes

regret + to + مصدر	يأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شئ ما
regret + v. + ing	يندم على شئ عمله من قبل

Ex: We **regret to tell** you that you won't get the job.
He **regretted making** the same mistake over and over again.

adverb ظرف + adjective صفة / adverb ظرف / pp
قبل الصفة أو الظرفيستخدم الظرف المنتهي بـ ly أو التصريف لزيادة التأكيد مثل
extremely للغاية / really فعلا / awfully بصورة فظيعة / terribly بصورة فظيعة unbelievably بشكل لا يصدق/ incredibly بصورة خيالية

Ex: My teacher is **extremely helpful**.
I'm **awfully sorry**.
My horse ran **terribly slowly**.
I've been **awfully worried** about this week's exam.

لجعل معنى الجملة أقوى do / does / did يمكن أن نجعل معنى الجملة أقوى بإستخدام

Ex: I do love pop music.
We do have a lot of information about the sun.

northern / southern / eastern / western تستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل اسم الدولة أو المنطقة

Ex: Alexandria is **in northern** Egypt.
= Alexandria is **in the north of** Egypt.
He lived for a few years **in southern** Egypt.
He lived for a few years **in the south of** Egypt.

go dark يصبح مظلم	go blind يصبح أعمى	go deaf يصبح أصم	go dumb يصبح أبكم
go و معناه هنا become ولاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد الفعل			

Language Functions

Asking for an explanation طلب تفسير	Giving an explanation تقديم تفسير
Can you explain why...?	Let me explain.

Do you know how...?	I'll try and explain.
I'd like to know how...?	Here's what happens.
How on earth...? كيف .... بالله عليك؟	What happens is that..
Could you tell me how/why...?	I'll explain that to you.

Examples:

1- A: How on earth do floods occur so quickly?

B: Here's what happens. If a lot of rain falls in a short time, the soil can't absorb it all and the water stays on the surface of the land.

2- A: Can you explain why cities sometimes flood?

B: I'll try and explain. It's usually when there's a river in or near the city. Water runs off the land into the river and the river becomes too full. The water then runs into the city.

✍ ***Respond to each of the following situations:***

1- You ask a friend how floods occur so quickly.
2- A friend asks you that makes a good businessman.
3- You ask friend why cities sometimes flood.
4- A friend asks you why some people enjoy action films.

1- Respond to each of the following situations :

1-

1. A friend asks why the sun disappears during the solar eclipse.
2. A friend asks you what the sun is.
3. A friend asks you what you think about the last football World Cup matches.
4. You tell your friend about the bad effects of electrical storms.
5. Your friend asks you about the benefits of volcanoes.
6. Someone says that reading books is a waste of time. Disagree, giving a reason.
7. You ask your friend why the solar eclipse happens.
8. Your brother asks you what the word" nature" means.
9. Your friend asks you why ultraviolet rays don't harm us.
10. Your friend says that the sun is a giant ball of hot gasses; it is 150 million km from the Earth
11. Your friend thinks that the sun rays aren't harmful to our sight.
12- Your friend says that the sun is a giant ball of hot gasses; it is 150 million km from the Earth
13 – Your friend asks you why ultraviolet rays don't harm us.
14 – Your friend thinks that the sun rays aren't harmful to our sight.
15 – Your brother asks you what the word" nature" means.

2-Mention the place , the speakers and the language each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A: How often should I water this plant?
B: This is a house plant. It should be watered every 2 weeks.
A: How much is it? B: Twenty pounds.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

2 - A: Drop me off here, please. How much do you want?
B: It's seven pounds on the meter. A: Here you are.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3- A: What's wrong with this television?

B: I spilled a cup of tea on it and it went up in smoke. Then it stopped working.
A: I think it will need a lot of repair. Let me check it first.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

4- A: Do you remember what happened? B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.
A: How do you fell now? B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?
A: We are not sure yet. We will have to check you have no broken bones.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

5- A: are you in your first year? B: yes, I am studying English, but it is not only my third week.
A: my parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it? B: yes, definitely.
Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

3-Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Listening Ex

1- Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out ..... during an eclipse.

a- permanent	**b-permanently**	**c- temporary**	**d- temporarily**

2- People .... right to think that the sun is very important.

a- have	**b- do**	**c- had**	**c- are**

3- If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there ... be no life on Earth.

a- will	**b- will have**	**c- would have**	**d- would**

4- The sun is a giant ball of hot .... Which is 150 million kilometres from the Earth.

a- air	**b- gasses**	**c- gas**	**d- oxygen**

5- How .... is the sun? The surface of the sun is about 6,000 degrees centigrade

a-hot	**b- heat**	**c- much**	**d- far**

6- If you took the temperature at its ...., you'd find it was more like 15 million degrees.

a- surface	**b- centre**	**c- end**	**d- bottom**

7- The sun gives us heat and light, but it also gives out x-rays and ultraviolet rays, which can be very harmful.............. life.

a- to	**b- for**	**c- with**	**d- by**

8- Most of these rays are ....in the atmosphere, so they aren't able to affect us.

a- absorbent	**b- indulged**	**c- absorbed**	**d- taken**

9- I ought to warn you .... one very important thing.

a- about	**b- to**	**c- for**	**d- by**

10- The sun is incredibly strong and you should never look ....at it. If you look at the sun, you'll damage your sight.

a- straight	**b-straightly**	**c- deeply**	**d- straighten**

11- He now has problems .... his eyes as he has looked at the sun.

a- in	**b- by**	**c- with**	**d- of**

12- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his.........

a- site	**b- insight**	**c- sight**	**d-slightness**

S.B Exercise

13- If you live in ...... Europe or Africa, temperatures are high and there is little rain .

a- south	**b- southerly**	**c- southern**	**d- southerner**

14- It is unusual for a weather .... to surprise us.

a- foretell	**b- foresee**	**c- forecast**	**d- prophecy**

15- People have seen giant pieces of ice ..... from the sky.

01000453264 01287277089

a- fall	**b- to fall**	**c- fell**	**d- falling**

16- Some storms are very ....and may cause terrible damage.

a- unusual	**b-usual**	**c- usually**	**d- unusually**

17- Dunwich was once an important port, but in the 14th century, most of the town disappeared ....the sea.

a-below	**b- under**	**c- beneath**	**d-behind**

18- The .... storm in Britain killed more than 8,000 people in 1703.

a- worse	**b- bad**	**c- worst**	**d- best**

19- The worst flood in history was in 1887 in China when the Yellow River .... and killed around a million people.

a- flooded	**b- raised**	**c- rose**	**d- increased**

20- Unusual weather is becoming more......., with very high or low temperatures and very heavy rainfall all over the world.

a- usual	**b- normal**	**c- ordinary**	**d- common**

21- In Europe in the eighteenth century, there was a Little Ice Age when rivers like the River Thames in England ....

a- freeze	**b- froze**	**c- dried**	**d- vaporized**

22- Life on Earth depends on heat and light from the sun.

a- sun	**b- moon**	**c- planets**	**d- universe**

23- If something ....liquid, heat, etc., it takes in the liquid, heat, etc., through its surface

a- dries	**b- vaporizes**	**c- solidifies**	**d- absorbs**

24- ....is all the plants, creatures, substances and forces that exist in the universe, which aren't made by people.

a- Nature	**b- Environment**	**c- Atmosphere**	**d- Surroundings**

25- ....occurs when the sun or moon seems to disappear, because one of them is passing between the other and the Earth.

a- Solar eclipse	**b- Lunar eclipse**	**c- Total eclipse**	**d- Eclipse**

26- ....is a hole in the Earth from which hot water can rise.

a- Well	**b- Spring**	**c- Geyser**	**d- Fountain**

27- He is blind as he has lost his ....

a- hearing	**b- sight**	**c- smell**	**d- sense**

28- People's skin goes darker because of.................

a- infrared rays	**b- ultraviolet rays**	**c- sun rays**	**d- beams**

29- ....is a long period when there is no rain and people don't have enough water.

a- Hurricane	**b- Rainfall**	**c- Drought**	**d- Starvation**

30- A sudden flash of light in the sky during a storm is called ....

a- lightning	**b- thunder**	**c- storm**	**d- tornado**

31- The north part of a country or area is called....................

a- north	**b- northern**	**c- northerly**	**d- northerner**

32- A .....wind comes from the north.

a- north	**b- northern**	**c- northerly**	**d- northerner**

33- The south part of a country is called ....

a- south	**b- southern**	**c- southerly**	**d- southerner**

34- A ....wind comes from the south.

a- south	**b- southern**	**c- southerly**	**d- southerner**

35- Volcanoes, drought and rainfall are all ....

a- phenomenon	**b- demonstrations**	**c- Phenomena**	**d- features**

36- The ....place in the world is Port Martin in Antarctica.

a- windy	**b- windier**	**c- windiest**	**d- winy**

37- The ....wind speed is 64 km an hour.

01000453264 01287277089

a- central	**b- medium**	**c- average**	**d- normal**

38- The wind is so strong that it can lift people off their ....

a- bodies	**b- hands**	**c- feet**	**d- heads**

W.B Exercise

39- The best thing about our holiday to Iceland was our visit to the see the ... .
a- well **b- spring** **c- geyser** **d- streams**

40- If it rains so hard that the soil cannot. ....water quickly enough, there are floods.
a- drink **b- soak** **c- absorb** **d- take**

41- When there is an/a .... of the sun, everything goes dark and the birds stop singing..
a- eclipse **b- disappearance** **c- missing** **d- loss**

42- You cannot see .... but they can still damage your skin.
a- rays **b- sun rays** **c- ultraviolet rays** **d- sun beams**

43- She does not need to wear glasses. There is nothing wrong withher. ...
a- hearing **b- sight** **c- insight** **d- sights**

44- Scientists are not sure what ....volcanoes to erupt.
a- makes **b- lets** **c- causes** **d- encourages**

45- An eclipse of the sun is a strange natural.....................
a- disaster **b- dilemma** **c- phenomenon** **d- catastrophe**

46- Storms can .... at any time and in any place..
a- occur **b- take part** **c- take the place of** **d- incur**

47- It has not rained here for five months. It is the longest............. anyone can remember.
a- draught **b- drought** **c- draft** **d- drift**

48- When I was a child, I used to be afraid of storms. I covered my eyes so that I could not see 'the ....
a- light **b- thunder** **c- lightning** **d- lights**

49- Alexandria is in the................ of Egypt..
a- northerly **b- northerner** **c- northern** **d- north**

50- Electrical storms are a common .... in our part of the country..
a- occur **b- occurring** **c- occurrence** **d- incur**

51- Those trees have grown .... tall in the last two years.
a- phenomenon **b- phenomenal** **c- phenomena** **d- phenomenally**

52- Where we live, the wind usually blows in a .... direction.
a- south **b- southern** **c- southerner** **d- southerly**

53- Very..................... temperatures can make people ill.
a- big **b- great** **c- gross** **d- high**

54- Dunwich was destroyed by .... waves and .... storms.
a- high **b- tall** **c- long** **d- deep**

a- cruel **b- violent** **c- hard** **d- stiff**

55- Storms can cause....................... damage..
a- serious **b- strong** **c- high** **d- lot**

56- ....rain and .... winds destroyed buildings allover the country.
a- Heavy **b- Strong** **c- hard** **d- high**

a- heavy **b- strong** **c- hard** **d- high**

57- Denmark is in .... Europe.
a- north **b- northern** **c- northerly** **d- northerner**

4- Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (based on vocabulary)

1-The sun is incredible strong.
2-Lighting is the light you see during an electric storm.
3-A gypsy is a hole in the earth from which hot water can rise.
4-Ultrasonic rays means light which can make people's skin go darker.

01000453264 01287277089

5-An ecstasy occurs when the sun or moon seems to disappear, because one of them is passing between the other and the Earth.
6-The river floated and killed thousands of people.
7-A thunder storm is one of the most impressive sites in nature.
8-The wind was so strong that it lifted people on their feet.
9-Storm eaters are people who find and follow storms.
10-Extremely weather conditions affect people badly.
11-Why on land did you leave the gate open?
12-Very high temperatures can make people ill.
13-Unusual weather is not a modern phenomenal.
14-Some African countries are suffering from starvation and draught.
15-Alexandria is in the northern of Egypt.
16-When there is heavy rain, the earth cannot drink all the water.
17-Astronomers can predict when eclipses occurrence.
18-The weather forecast can predict the weather of the following day.
19-Some storms can case terrible damage.
20-The wind usually blows in a southern direction.

6-Translate into Arabic:

-1- People have always been fascinated by lightning, so there is a great deal of myth and folklore surrounding it. In ancient times, people believed that lightning represented the anger of gods, who wanted to punish people. It was also believed that lightning made the grass and other plants grow greener.
-2-Volcanoes are the most exciting and powerful natural event on earth. They provide dynamic and varied landforms. Every day there are about 20 volcanoes erupting on the earth .

7-Translate into English:

-1. الصراع بين الطبيعة و الانسان لن ينتهي و ان كان الانسان قد تغلب علي بعض الظواهر الطبيعة
2- لا يستطيع العلماء التنبؤ بالزلازل او البراكين .

Language Focus

Conditional If

The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن المواقف التى تكون صحيحة دائما مثل قوانين الطبيعة و الفيزياء و الكيمياء و الفلك ....الخ .

If + present simple مضارع بسيط ⟶ present simple مضارع بسيط

- **If** you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

The First Conditional الحالة الأولى

If / Unless + مضارع بسيط ⟶ will / shall / can / may + inf.

•تعبر الحالة الأولى عن أحداث محتملة فى المستقبل.

01000453264
01287277089

- **If** it **rains**, we**'ll get** wet.
- **If** she **works** hard, she **will pass** the test.
- **Unless** he **works** hard, he **won't succeed**.

The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

If + past simple ماضى بسيط	**would/could/might/should +inf.**

- **If** you **walked** all the way, it **would take** about three hours.
- I **would go** to the beach **if** it **were** summer.

• تعبر الحالة الثانية عن أحداث ممكنة و لكنها غير محتملة فى الحاضر أو المستقبل•

- I **would watch** the football match **if** they **showed** it on television.
  (I do not think they will show it)

• كما تعبر عن أشياء غير حقيقية أو مستحيلة•

- **If** I **were** you, **I'd listen** to the weather forecast before going for a picnic.
  (I am not you and can never be you.)

• لاحظ استخدام were مع المفرد للدلالة على الاستحالة

• تستخدم الحالة الثانية If I were you للنصيحة•

- **If** I **were** you, I**'d look** for another job.

• يمكن استخدام were بدلا من if مع ملاحظة أن were هى فعل الجملة الأساسى

- Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

• نستخدم were إذا كان فعل الجملة فعل آخر غير were ثم الفاعل ثم to + inf .

- Were it to rain, the match would be postponed.

• يمكن أن نستخدم had بدلا من if

- **Had** he enough time, he **would go** to the club.

• لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام مع if

- **What would you do** if you won a lot of money?

• يمكن استخدام should بدلا من if و يليها فاعل ثم مصدر

- **Should he play** well, he would win.

The Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

If + past perfect ماضى تام	**would/could/might/should +have +p.p.**

- **If** you hadn't phoned, I wouldn't have known you were back from your holiday.
- **If** you **hadn't gone** to that school, I **wouldn't have met** you.

• تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث خيالى فى الماضى.•

- **If** it **had continued** raining, the town **would have flooded**.
  (But it didn't continue raining and the town didn't flood.)
- **If** he **had been** taller, he **would have been** a basketball player.
  (But he is / wasn't taller and he didn't become a basketball player.)

• لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام مع if

- **What would you have done** if you **had won** a lot of money?

• يمكن أن نستخدم had بدلا من if و يليها فاعل ثم تصريف ثالث

- **If he had played** well, he would have won. (Had)
  Had he played well, he would have won.

ملاحظات:❖

• تنطبق if على الثلاثة حالات unless و يأتى بعدها جملة مثبتة

- **Unless** Peter **improves**, he will fail the exam.
- **Unless** he **were** lazy, he **wouldn't fail** the exam.
- **Unless** he **had worked** hard, he **wouldn't have succeeded**.

01000453264 01287277089

• لاحظ الفرق بين in case / in case of:في الاستخدام

In case لربما +	جملة
In case of فى حالة + v. + ing / noun	اسم

- **In case of having** enough money, he will buy a car.
- Take this money **in case you need** it.

•لاحظ التعبيرات التالية.

But for/ Without+ v. + ing/ noun	would + inf. / would have +pp
If it weren't for + v. + ing / noun	**would + inf.**
If it hadn't been for + v. + ing / noun	**would have + pp**

- **But for the Nile**, Egypt **would be** a desert.
  If it weren't for the Nile, Egypt **would be** a desert.
- **Without his hard work**, he **wouldn't have succeeded**.
  If it hadn't been for his hard work, he **wouldn't have succeeded**.

أدوات شرط أخرى:☺

as long as طالما / only if فقط اذا / on condition that بشرط أن
in the event that فى حالة / provided (providing) بشرط أن:

- You **can stay** with us **as long as** you share the rent.
- You **can drive** my car **only if** you **drive** carefully.
- I'**ll lend** you the money **on condition that** you **return** it within 6 months.
- **In the event that** he **wins** the prize, he **will** probably **celebrate** the event.
- She **will pass** her exams **provided / providing** she **studies** hard.

1-Respond to each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks you why the moon disappears during the lunar eclipse.
2- You ask your friend why the solar eclipse happens.
3- A friend asks why the sun disappears during the solar eclipse.
4-A friend asks you what the sun is.
A: Next Thursday, please.

S.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

1- If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there..... no life on Earth.

a- would be	**b- will be**	**c- is**	**d- would have been**

2- If you....... the temperature at its centre, you'd find it was 15 million degrees.

a- take	**c- took**	**d- had taken**	**d- 'd take**

3- If you look at the sun, you..........your sight.

a- damage	**b- 'd damage**	**c- 'll damage**	**d- would have damage**

4- .... OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?

a- was it	**b- will it be**	**c- would it be**	**d- Is it**

5- If he ....at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his sight.

a- hadn't looked	**b- didn't look**	**c- doesn't look**	**d-wouldn't look**

6- If it hadn't rained so heavily, we ....floods.

a- wouldn't have	**b- won't have**	**c- wouldn't have had**	**d- hadn't had**

7- I .... to the moon if I were asked.

a- go	**b- would go**	**c- will go**	**d- would have gone**

8- If it is very hot tomorrow, we .... to the beach.

a- don't go	**b- wouldn't go**	**c- won't go**	**d- wouldn't have gone**

9- People who live near volcanoes leave home if they.............

01000453264 01287277089

a- erupt	**b- erupted**	**c- had erupted**	**d- will erupt**

10- If I were you, I........ to the weather forecast before deciding where to go tomorrow.

a- will listen	**b- would listen**	**c- would have listened**	**d- listen**

11- If the storm had reached the city, houses and shops ....

a- will be destroyed	**b- would be destroyed**	**c- would have destroyed**	**d- would have been destroyed**

12- What would happen if a huge storm .... the coast of Egypt?

a- hits	**b- hit**	**c- would hit**	**d- would have hit**

13- If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on Earth, ...?

a- will they	**b- did we**	**c- did there**	**d- would there**

14- If you took the temperature at the centre of the sun, you.... it was more like 15 million degrees.

a- 'd find	**b- will find**	**c- would have found**	**d- can find**

15- If he hadn't looked at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his Sight.

a- would damage	**b- would have damaged**	**c- wouldn't damage**	**d- wouldn't have damaged**

W.B

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d

1- If you ....at the sun, you will damage your sight.

a- look	**b- looked**	**c- had looked**	**d- are looking**

2- If there are clouds in the sky tonight, you ....able to see the moon.

a- aren't	**b- wouldn't be**	**c- wouldn't have been**	**d- will not be**

3- If it ....an eclipse, the sky would have gone dark .

a- were	**b- was**	**c- had been**	**d- is**

4- If I discovered a new planet, I ....it my mother's name.

a- would give	**b- will give**	**c- give**	**d- would have given**

5- If there was an eclipse of the sun in my country, I ....definitely watch it.

a- will	**b- would**	**c- can**	**d- would have**

6- If you watch the sky on a clear night, you ....see stars and planets.

a- can	**b- would**	**c- could**	**d- might have**

7- If the sun didn't give light and heat, there ....any life on Earth.

a-won't be	**b-wouldn't have been**	**c- wouldn't be**	**d- didn't have**

8- If you wear a hat, your face.............. burnt.

a- won't get	**b- wouldn't get**	**c- don't get**	**d- can get**

9- It .... better for your eyes if you wear sunglasses.

a- will be	**b- is**	**c- would be**	**d- can be**

10- If you .... so long in the sun, you wouldn't have got burnt.

a- didn't spend	**b- don't spend**	**c- haven't spent**	**d- hadn't spent**

11- If it........... warm and sunny tomorrow, I'll go swimming

a- is	**b- was**	**c- be**	**d- will be**

12- If the storm reaches our area, trees will be blown down and houses.......................

a-will damage	**b- will be damaged**	**c- damaged**	**d- would be damaged**

13- If the volcano ...., I'd be very surprised/we would leave quickly.

a- erupts	**b- erupt**	**c- erupted**	**d- was erupted**

14- If the flood had been here, houses would have been damaged.

a- would have damaged	**b- would have been damaged**	**c- had been damaged**	**d- will be damaged**

Correct the mistakes in these sentences: (Based on Grammar)

1-If he is a lawyer, he could help you.
2-If he had enough money, he will buy a car.
3-If he weren't short, he could join the basketball team.
4-If he hadn't got up late, he wouldn't have missed the train.
5-If he had had a map, he wouldn't have been lost.
6-If he hadn't been lazy, he wouldn't have failed.
7-If he had worked hard last year, he wouldn't have failed the exam.
8-If you hurry up, you'll miss the train.
9-He could help you if he is a doctor.
10-I would write to him if I know his address.
11-Were he well, he could come to the party.
12-He could go to the club if he has enough money.
13-Take an umbrella in case of it rains
14-If he had an umbrella, he wouldn't have got wet in the rain.
15-If he had worked hard, he wouldn't fail.
16-Unless my father's help, I wouldn't have passed my exams.
17-Unless the driver was careful he could have avoided a terrible accident.
18-If the rescuers didn't make great efforts, many people would have died.
19-He will succeed provides he studies hard.
20-Unless I have enough time, I'll go to the cinema.

Translate into Arabic:

Lack of water is a thorny problem facing all countries. Thus, all states try hard to look for urgent solutions to save it. Some experts predict that wars will break out to control sources of water and rivers.It is better for all nations to cooperate not to fight for water.

Translate into English:

1-تمثل الظواهر الطبيعية عدوا لدودا للانسان لايستطيع ترويضه.
2-ضرب زلزال مدمر اليابان نتج عنه خسائر هائلة.

Test on Unit 9

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:
5-Someone says that reading books is a waste of time. Disagree, giving a reason.
6-A friend asks you what you think about the last football World Cup matches.
7-Someone asks you where your friend Ali is. You are almost certain he is on holiday.
8-A friend suggests that you go on a picnic together. Suggest something else.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

3- A: How often should I water this plant?
B: This is a house plant. It should be watered every 2 weeks.
A: How much is it?
B: Twenty pounds.

Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

4- A: Drop me off here, please. How much do you want?
B: It's seven pounds on the meter.
A: Here you are.

Place: ...... - Speaker A: .... - Speaker B: .... - Function: ....

01000453264 01287277089

3- Choose the correct answer:

17-If you (walk – are walking – walked – had walked) all the way, it would take about 3 hours.
18-I would go to the beach if it (is – had been – is being – were) summer.
19-I (watch – would watch – would have watched – watched) the football match if they showed it on TV.
20-If I (were – had been – am – were being) you, I'd listen to the weather forecast before going for a picnic.
21-If you had not phoned, I (won't know – wouldn't know – wouldn't have known) you were back from your holiday.
22-If I (don't go – hadn't gone – didn't go – hasn't gone) to that school, I wouldn't have met you.
23-If it had continued raining, the town (would have flooded – would flood – will flood – might flood).
24-If he (is – were – had been – was) taller, he would have been a basketball player.
25-It should be snowing now according to the (climate – weather – air – atmosphere) forecast.
26-Some storms are very unusual and may (result – reason – cause – find) terrible damage.
27- The report (forecasts – casts – coasts – costs) that prices will rise by 3% next month.
28-A violent storm (fit – hit – met – set) the area and destroyed some houses.
29- There has been below average (rainbow – raincoat – rainforest – rainfall) this month.
30-The sea flooded and killed (round – above – around – beneath) 2000 people.
31-Unusual weather is becoming more common with very (high – wide – strong – big) or low temperatures.
32-The worst flood in (geography – history – chemistry – biology) occurred in China in 1887.

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

7-If she had listened to my directions last night, she wouldn't turn down the wrong street.
8-In case of I had a degree, I could get a job easily.
9-If she is late, we are going without her.
10-When exactly did the accident concur?
11-If the draught continues, there is going to be a famine.
12-There was a violent storm with thunder and lighting.

5- Read the passage then answer the questions: (June, 2005)

Today, many people use natural ways to cure illnesses that don't cause side effects. "Acupuncture" and "biofeedback" are two popular methods. Doctors have been using acupuncture in China for over two thousand years. It involves pushing needles into the skin at special points around the body. Ancient Chinese philosophers believed that they were connected to different organs and could cure diseases.
Today, "acupuncture" is used in many countries, and studies show that it works especially for headaches, backaches and smoking. Since the 1950s, doctors in China have also been using acupuncture in major operations. Patients are awake and know what is happening in the operation but they feel little or no pain. Scientists think that the needles make the body produce a chemical called "endorphin" that helps to reduce the feeling of pain.
Another natural way to cure illnesses is "biofeedback". It uses technology to help people control their internal organs. For example, if a person has problems with sleeping, he/she is connected to a special computer that shows the activity of the brain. The person then is asked to do some mental exercises to relax. When the brain activity falls and the person is relaxed, the computer makes a noise. Slowly, the person learns what type of mental exercises can help him/her to reduce the activity of the brain.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why do many people prefer acupuncture and biofeedback to cure diseases?
2- How do doctors use acupuncture in operations?

3- Biofeedback uses technology to help people control their internal organs. Explain.

B).Choose the correct answer:

4-Endorphin------------------the feeling of pain.

a) increases b) grows c) decreases d) expands

5-A person who has problems with sleeping is connected to a special computer to------------.

a) do written exercises b) show the activity of the brain

c) try to relax d) do mental exercises

6- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Do you know how dangerous stress can be? It affects us both physically and mentally, so reducing stress is something that we should all try to do. While many people feel that the best way to get rid of stress is some form of exercise, there are other ways which are just as effective.

The benefits of physical exercise are obvious. First of all, keeping fit helps your body stay strong and healthy. Therefore you are less likely to get sick or suffer from stress – related health problems such as heart attacks and cancer. Furthermore, exercise is a good way to get rid of frustration and anger, because after exercise the brain produce hormones called endorphins which make us feel good.

On the other hand, if you are out of shape, exercise can be quite painful. You may pull a muscle or injure yourself. Furthermore, exercising may even cause more stress since it will add to your already hectic schedule.

In conclusion, the best way to combat stress in our lives is to live a healthy life. As James Freeman Clark says, "Never hurry. Take plenty of exercise. Always be cheerful. Take all the sleep you need. You may expect to be well".

A. Answer the following questions:

1-How can we avoid stress-related health problems?

2-Find words in the passage which mean: a) clear b) very busy

3-What does the underlined word it refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4- According to the passage, which of the following statements is NOT true:

a) Endorphins are produced after exercise.

b) Exercise has mental and physical benefits.

c) People who are under stress need exercise.

d) Taking exercise makes you wealthy.

5- Endorphins can make you feel (lazy – very tired – energetic – unhappy).

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (June, 2005)

"Computers in society?"

Write about the different areas in which we use computers.

9- A)Translate into Arabic: (June, 2000)

Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress. This is because the immune system is less efficient when we are worried. Doctors have also found out that people with mild colds get better if the doctor is kind.

B) Translate into English:

1-تُنشأ المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة علي القراءة

2-ان الزلازل والبراكين والسيول والجفاف والمجا عات ظواهر طبيعية ممكن ان تؤدى الى خسائر هائلة

Review C



Tape script

Adel: So, Hamid, can you go right to the top?
Hamid:
Yes, it's open to the public from nine o'clock in the morning until one o'clock at night. My parents went last week and they said the view was fantastic. They said they could see right across the city, and the river looked beautiful at night, especially when it was beginning to go dark and the city lights came on.
Adel: Do you know why it was built?
Hamid:
Yes, it's a television tower. It was designed by one of our best architects, Naum Chebib.
Adel: And there's a restaurant at the top, isn't there?
Hamid:
Yes, it goes round very slowly, so that you can see the whole city while you are eating.
Adel: How much does it cost to go to the top?
Hamid: I think it's about twenty-five pounds.
Adel: That's not bad, is it?
Hamid: No, but you have to pay a bit more if you take a video camera.
Adel: Do you know how tall it is?
Hamid:
Yes, it's 187 metres tall. It's not the tallest building in the world, but when it was built in 1961, it was the tallest concrete structure in the world.
Adel:
That must have been quite difficult. I thought all modern buildings had metal inside to strengthen the concrete. And it was damaged by an earthquake, wasn't it?
Hamid:
That's right – when the city was hit by an earthquake in 1992. The damage wasn't serious – and it's all been repaired now.
Adel: Have you ever been to the top?
Hamid: No , but I'd love to go, especially after what my parents said
Adel:
Why don't we go together? I'd love to see what the Pyramids look like from the top.
Hamid:
They're fifteen kilometres away, but you can see them really clearly. If we went in the evening, we'd see the Nile at night.
Adel: Ok, Let's arrange a date and time.

Reading	Controlling Floods	((((((

In many countries, rivers that cause floods have to be controlled. There are many ways of doing this, including buildings walls along the sides of rivers so that they do not flood even when the water level rises. In some places lakes are created next to rivers so that, when the level rises, the water runs into the lakes instead of into the streets of town or cities. In other places, dams have been built to stop rivers flooding. The Aswan dam is a good example of this.

01000453264 01287277089

In London, the British capital, many areas are below the level of the river Thames, which means that the city has to be protected from possible floods. To do this, a huge metal wall called the Thames Barrier was built across the river. Usually this stays open so boats can pass up the Thames to London or down the river to the sea. If the water in the river rises to a dangerous level, however, the wall can be raised. Between 1982, when it was finished, and 2009, the Thames Barrier was raised over 100 times. Venice in Italy has the same control system.

We usually think of floods as bad and there are many examples of floods which have destroyed towns, cities and farm land. But floods can also benefit people. In the past, for example, Nile floods made agricultural land more fertile for farmers.

((((((New Vocabulary((((((

honeymoon شهر العسل	mysteries اسرار غامضة	Evil شر
break promise لايفي بوعده	benefit يفيد	Disappear يختفي
disappointed محبط	fertile خصب	Protect from يحمي
agricultural زراعي	make up يؤلف	Farm land ارض زراعية
barrier حاجز	sail يبحر	Solid صلب
Far from بعيد عن	Cut into يقطع الي	Incredible مذهل

Review C

11. What would you say in these situations

1 – You are asked about the weather of Egypt.
2 – A friend asks you about the risks of storms.
3 – A friend tells you that the pyramids were built without machines.
4 – Someone thinks that the Egyptian team is the best . you agree.

12. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 -Too much sun can be ....
a)respectable b) harmful c) unthinkable d)in conflict
2 -We .... on the door three times, but they did not hear us.
a) visited b called c) hit d)knocked
3- Nurses are part of the medical.............. .
a) profession b work c) job d) career
4- I get on well with all my............. at work, but they are not close friends.
a)people b workers c) colleagues d) relatives
5- The accident .... at eight o'clock when everyone was on their way to work.
a) occurred b)took c) came d) caused
6- They left two hours ago, so they .... arrived by now. It is not far.
a)must b) must have c) have d) can't have
7- No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he.... gone to see his uncle.
,a)must b) can't have c) might have d) must have
8- She asked me whether .... there before.
a **I had been** b **I went** **c) I go** **d)had I been**
9 -If .... for too long, I get a headache.
a **I'll read** b **I read** **c) I had read** **d) I would read**
10- If you had come ten minutes later, I.......................
a) would leave b) will leave c) leave d) would have left

13. find and Correct the mistake in each sentence:

a - I'm not sure how well did in the test at school today, but I think I might pass.
b- You can't have been very thirsty. There's no orange juice left in the bottle.

c- I asked him where had he been all morning..
d- If it had been too hot, we wouldn't go to the beach.
e -What about go shopping this afternoon?
f-How in earth is it possible to irrigate the desert?

14. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A village in the mountains

When the people of a small island off the coast of Scotland woke up and looked out of their bedroom windows one morning, they were amazed. At the north end of their island, they saw mountains covered with snow and a village. The village consisted of a large building with smaller houses around it. The reason that the people were amazed was because none of these things had been there when they went to bed the night before. This strange sight remained all day, but then disappeared when the sun went down. Scientists believe that they had seen the mountains and village from another country, 800 kilometres to the north. Experts agreed that unusual weather and light had probably caused this strange sight.

A – Answer the following questions :.

1- What did the people see when they looked at of their windows?
2- When did the village disappear?
3 What did scientists think they had seen?

B – Choose the correct answer :

4 How did the people feel when they saw the village?
a) They were frightened. B)They were angry.
c)They were disappointed. d)They were very surprised.

5 How did the experts explain the sight?
a) They thought people had built a new village.
b)They said the islanders had not really seen anything unusual.
c) They thought it was caused by the weather.
c) They thought the village was made of snow.

Write a paragraph of 100 words about :

Unusual weather you remember

15. Translation :

A -Translate into Arabic:

If you live in southern Europe or Africa, you know that the temperatures are higher and there is less rain than if you live in northern Europe or Canada. It is unusual for the weather forecast to surprise us.

B - Translate into English :

1- كانت الرياح بالقطع شديدة خلال الليل اليس كذلك؟
2- احمد وعلا وعدونا ان يكونوا غدا في الصباح الباكر

Test Practice 1

A- Language Functions

16. Respond to each of the following situations

1- Someone says they think magazines are a waste of money. Disagree, giving a reason.
2- A friend from England calls and asks about the weather. You see dark clouds in the sky.
3- One of your friends watched a football match on TV and found it boring. You have a different opinion.
4- 4You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is *energy*..

5- 2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two min-dialogues :
6-
7- **1 A** So, John, could you tell our listeners how you started?
8- **B** Certainly. It was when I was seven. I won first prize in a poetry competition. When I was a student, some of my stories were published in a university magazine.
9- **A** And now it's your full-time job?
10- **B** That's right. My second novel was published last year..

Place :………..	**Speaker A :……….**	**Speaker B:………..**	**Function :……….**

11- **2- A** Could you help me carry the shopping into the house, please, Aisha?
12- **B** OK, Mum. Where shall I put it?
13- **A** Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

Place :………..	**Speaker A :……….**	**Speaker B:………..**	**Function :……….**

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - This medicine is safe. There are no ....
a- top effects b- side effects c- leaks d- waste
2- I'm going to have lunch with friends tomorrow. We are .... at the restaurant at 12.30.
a - going to meet b- would meet c- will meet d- meet
3 -The .... between Cairo and my town is 650 kilometres.
a -district b- area c- distance d -space
4 It is hard to walk in space because there is no ………
a- gravity b- waiting c- spin d- air
5- In Britain. Children…………………secondary school from the age of 11.
A- go b- share c-intend d- attend
6- Most furniture .... from wood.
a -made b- is made c- make d- makes
7 -Many people .... vegetables in their gardens.
a -growing b- are grown c- grow d- is grown
8 -In very hot weather, ice cream turns to …………...
a- water b- soft c -liquid d- solid
9- We call oil and coal .... fuels.
a -fossil b)old c -renewable d- waste
10- She ....an archaeologist when she leaves university. That is her plan.
a -will become b- am becoming c- is going to become d- become

01000453264 01287277089

11- He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight….. at 5.30 in the morning.

a- leaving b- leaves c-left d- leave

12 -We don't have …………….. time. We'll have to hurry.

a -many b- some c- a lot d- much

13- My friend and I look very different, but our personalities are ....

a -alike b- same c- common d-like

14- Six months …………... half a year.

a -are b- is c- be d-am

15- The walls of the . ... were built to protect the town.

a- pyramid b-mission c- castle d- house

16- I am writing ……………that my teacher asked for.

a- essay b- a essay c- the essay d- that essay

4. find and Correct the mistake in each of the following sentence:

a She's going meet her sister in town.

b I fixed the lake in the petrol tank.

c How many time do I need to drive to the city centre?

d Oil and gas are find under the ground.

e Water is the solid form of ice .

f The married team went to Italy on their honeymoon.

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In the winter, *many* animals and birds travel hundreds of kilometres to places with a wormer Climate and more food. This incredible journey takes place every year at about the same time. It is common to see birds sitting on walls or telephone wires waiting to travel the long distance between the places where they spend their summers and their winters.

Scientists don't know exactly how they find their way to and from their winter homes. It is thought that there are different ways, for example, using the sun and stars for navigation. Some people believe that birds depend on their senses, including their sense of smell, to help them find the way. Some animals and birds travel thousands of kilometres. Blue whales have been known to travel up to 20,000 kilometres.

A- Give short answers to the following questions:

1- Why do some birds and animals spend their winters and summers in different places?

2 -How do birds and animals use the sun and stars?

3 -What is surprising about the blue whale?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Why are the journeys birds and animals make incredible?

a -They take place at exactly the same time every year.

b- They are very long.

c- The birds and animals do not know where they are going.

d- They take place in winter.

5 -Who does the word they refer to in the phrase they find their way?

a- scientists b -winter homes c- birds and animals d -the sun and stars

6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The girl *Against the Jungle* is the story of a girl who is flying to Brazil with her mother . Suddenly there is a storm and the plane crashes .The girl wakes up to find herself in the

01000453264 01287277089

middle of a thick jungle .She is the only survivor . She realises that it will be difficult for anyone to find her
in the jungle and she knows that if she stays where she is, she will die. Then she remembers some advice her father had given her many years before. He had said. "If you are lost in a jungle, you should find a river and follow it." The next day, she sets off to find a river. After walking for seven days. She comes to a small town where people look after her.

A - Give short answers to the following questions:

1 -Where are the girl and her mother travelling to?

2- Where does the plane crash?

3- Where does the girl ·find herself after walking out of the jungle?

B - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What is a survivor?

a -Someone who rescues people.

b -Someone who does not die in an accident.

c -Someone who dies in a plane crash.

d -Someone who gets lost in a forest.

5- How long does she walk for?

a- seven weeks b- a year c- a week d - seven hours

D- Writing

8. Write a paragraph of 100 words

Describing what families can do to save energy

9 .Translation :

A - Translate into Arabic:

Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins. It is impossible to go for a walk. However, you can do exercises

B -Translate into English :

1-هل تطفيء الانوار عندما تكون خارج الغرفة؟.

2- بعدما انهت دراستها التحقت داليا بجامعة القاهرة.

Test Practice 2

A- Language Functions

17. Respond to each of the following situations

1- A foreign friend wants to know how to make tea the Egyptian way. Tell him/her what to do first.

2- Someone asks what you were doing at eight o'clock this morning.

3- A friend asks you what you think about TV news programmes.

4- A friend wants a job to help poor people. Advise him or her.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two min-dialogues :

1 A At last we're here. What time does our flight leave, Dad?

B At midday. We've still got lots of time.

A Are you sure we have everything we need?

B Yes, I'm sure. Please stop worrying, Ali!

Place :..........	**Speaker A :..........**	**Speaker B:..........**	**Function :..........**

2- **A** So, for your homework, I want you all to make a list of all the plants growing in your neighbourhood.
B Shall we just write the names of the plants?
A No, write the names and a short description.
B When is the homework for?
A Next Thursday, please.

Place :………..	**Speaker A :……….**	**Speaker B:………..**	**Function :……….**

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I expect I.............. you at the weekend.
a- am going to see b -am seeing c- 'II see d- see
2 -After the accident, the doctor .... her to check she was not *injured.*
a-examined b -looked at c- tested d- studied
3- Do you have .... free time this afternoon?
a- a b- the c- many d-any
4- We went to the opening of a new school last week. It was a very interesting ….
a- occasion b- time c- view d- situation
5- Petrol …………………………from oil.
a- made b- is made c- makes d- are made
6 -Wind and wave power are types of ……….energy.
a- new b -waste c- renewable d-cheap
7- When I was younger, I .... go swimming every day.
a- usually b- used c- use d -used to
8 -My sister .... at university for three years. She comes home every weekend .
a- is b- has been c- is being d- had been
9- The police think he did it. He is the main ....
a- suspect b- pioneer c- publisher d- agent
10- I really enjoy reading Agatha Christie novels. I particularly like her …..
a- way b- style c- system d- design
11- It ….. .... that air travel will become more popular in the future.
a- is thought b -was thought c- thought d -thinks
12- He did nothing wrong. He's................ .
a- suspect b-guilty c-innocent d- sensible
13- If he doesn't get eight hours sleep every night, he ..... really tired the next day. A-will feel b- feels c- would feel d- is feeling
14- If I have any free time tomorrow, ... for a walk in the park.
a -I went b- I go c- I'd go d- I'll go
15- The piano is our favourite musical ....
a -tool b -instrument c- equipment d- device
16- Her uncle can't remember his accident. The doctor thinks he may have ....
a -a headache b- phobia c- amnesia d -injury

4. find and Correct the mistake in each of the following sentence:

1- I need to get fit, so I've made a decision. I do more exercise.
2- *The Prisoner of Zenda* was wrote by Anthony Hope.
3- We moved to this house two years ago today, so we lived here for exactly two years.
4-Before I entered the university, I had to show my credit card.
5- If you heat water, it melts.

6- Ra'fat EI-Haggan and Goma'a EI-Shawwan were very famous Egyptian kings.

C- Reading

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

.The Taj Mahal, which is outside the city of Agra in India, was built by the Emperor Shah Jahan. It is a tomb for his favourite wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Her body is buried under the building. The Taj Mahal was started in 1633 and took 22 years to build. Today, it is one of the most popular buildings in the world for tourists.

The Taj Mahal is built of white stone which is covered with beautiful designs. The highest part of the roof of the Taj Mahal is shaped like an onion. In front of the building is a lake. At night! In the light of the moon, you can see the Taj Mahal in this lake - it is a beautiful sight.

A - Give short answers to the following questions:

1 Who was Mumtaz Mahal?

2 In what year did they finish building the Taj Mahal?

3 Describe theTaj Mahar.

B - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 Why was the Taj Mahal built??

a- in memory of Shah Jahan.

b- to attract tourists

c- in memory of Shah Jahan's wife

d -as a castle

5 Why can visitors sometimes see the Taj Mahal in the lake?

a- The water is like a mirror B- The building is in the middle of a lake.

c- The Taj Mahal is on an island. D- The city is often flooded.

6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People suddenly started seeing the strange plants in their gardens last spring. No one had ever seen anything like them before. And no one knew where they had come from. At first, some people pulled them out and burned them because they thought they looked horrible. But most people left them where they were without touching them. The next summer people enjoyed the big purple-coloured flowers that the plants produced. It was not until August that people read in their newspapers the first reports that the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them. There is never much interesting news in August. So people thought that journalists had made up these stories about walking plants to sell a few more newspapers and make money. Then in September there was terrible news.

A - Give short answers to the following questions:

1- Why did some people destroy the plants?

2 -How were the plants dangerous to people?

3- What did people think when they read the newspaper stories for the first time?

B - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 -Where is this text from?

A- a newspaper b-a science fiction story

c-a detective story d- a book on gardening

5 -What does *them* refer to in the plants could walk and run and even catch people and kill them?

a- the plants b- the journalists c- the newspapers d- the people

D Writing

8. Write a paragraph of 100 words about

A novel or a short story you have been reading.

9 .Translation :

A - Translate into Arabic:

Yahia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo. He graduated in law and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat.

B -Translate into English :

1- لو كنت قلقا عليك ان تسأل والديك النصيحة.

2-ما نوعية الانشطة التي تحب ان ممارستها خلال نهاية الأسبوع؟

Test Practice 3

18. Respond to each of the following situations

1- You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.

2- A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.

3- A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.

4- Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.

2- Mention the place , the speakers and the language function in each of the following two min-dialogues :

1- A- Excuse me, sir. The captain has asked everyone to return to their seats.

B- Does that mean we are going to land soon?

A -Yes, in about 15 minutes.

Place :………..	Speaker A :……….	Speaker B:………..	Function :……….

2- A Have you seen Tarek?

B- No, sir. He was at his desk on the phone a few minutes ago.

A- Isn't he there now?

B- No, maybe he's gone home already..

A- He can't have gone home. He's preparing a report for me..

Place :………..	Speaker A :……….	Speaker B:………..	Function :……….

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Don't worry. I'm sure .... them again soon.

a) you see **b)** you're seeing **c)**you'll see **d)** you're going to see

2- Wanting friends is part of human ....

a) nature b) conflict c) will d) life

3- They have just received this photo as an e-mail ....

a) post b) attachment c) letter d) part

4- lightning is a dangerous but natural ....

a) Sight b) response c) eclipse d) phenomenon

5- She didn't see her brother this morning. He .... the flat very early.

a) must have left b) must leave c) can't have left d) can't leave

6- He left his glasses at school yesterday. I'm hoping someone .... found them.

a)must have b) might have c) can't have d) can have

7-The quickest way for Sawsan to get to school is to .... a train.

a) go b) bring c) come d) take

8 -That plant has been .... so that it gets lots of light.
a) explored b) raised c) positioned d) put
9 -Taha's mother asked him where ....
a) he had been b) had he been c) has he been d) he has been
10- She promised she .... me as soon as the plane landed.
a) will phone b) phoned c) would phone d) phones
11- Is that someone .... on our door? I'll see who it is.
a) hitting b) knocking c) smashing d) beating
12- Their uncle is a scientist. He's .... research into new forms of energy.
a) making b) taking c) getting d) doing
13- If you .... earlier, you wouldn't have missed your train.
a) had left b) leave c) would have left d) left
14 -................ you work harder, you'll fail your exam.
a) If b) Unless c) When d) As
15- I'm hot today. How about ………………. to the beach?
a) gone b) going c) went d) go
16- Accidents .... more frequently when the roads are busy.
a) take part b) come in c) cause d) occur

4. find and Correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1- Let's try to find them. They can't have went very far.
2- Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confession .
3-He asked me if saw his newspaper.
4- The statue of Ramses II is a very important Ancient Egyptian magnet.
5- People can waste lots of money by using the underground.
6- The accident wouldn't happen if he hadn't been using his mobile phone.

C- Reading

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

. The Metro is the name of the underground railway system in Paris, the capital of France. The system has 16 lines and over 300 stations. Together, the lines are about 200 kilometres long.

The Paris Metro is the second busiest underground system in Europe after Moscow, and carries about five million passengers every day. It is said that in the centre of Paris, you are never more than 500 metres from a Metro station.

The first line on the Metro was opened on July 19,1900. The system grew quickly, but stopped in 1914, at the beginning of the First World War. By the early 1920s, the central part of the system was finished, although in the1930s some of the lines were made longer to carry commuters to and from the outskirts of Paris.

A - Give short answers to the following questions:

1- Which city has the busiest underground railway system in Europe?
2 -Why did work on the Metro stop in 1914?
3- Why were some of the lines made longer in the 1930s?

B - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 -In what year were the first journeys made on the Paris Metro?
a- 1930 b- 1920 c -1914 d- 1900
5 -Who or what are *commuters?*

a- electrical goods
c -people who regularly travel to work
b -school children
d -university students

6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

An old sailor visits the young Jim Hawkins and pays him to look out for his enemies. Jim escapes death when sailors come looking for the old man's secret papers. Jim finds the papers; among them is a map showing an island with buried treasure. Jim decides to look for the treasure and gets ready to sail. Unfortunately, his crew includes Long John Silver, an evil man who also wants the treasure. Jim hears Long John Silver's plan to attack his men and take over the ship. An exciting battle takes place. Jim escapes to the island, where he discovers Ben Gunn an old man who has already found and hidden the treasure. At the end, Long John Silver's men are beaten and Jim returns safely to the ship with the treasure .

A - Give short answers to the following questions:

1 -Why does the old sailor give Jim Hawkins money?
2 -Why does everyone want the map that Jim finds?
3- What did Ben Gunn do with the treasure after he found it?

B - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What kind of text do you think this is?
a -a newspaper story b- part of a novel c- a police report d-a letter

5-What does the word them refer to in the phrase among them is a map?
a -Long John Silver's men
c- the secret papers
b -the old man's enemies
d- the crew of the ship

D Writing

8. Write an email to a friend describing

A book you have recently read

9 .Translation :

A - Translate into Arabic:

Egypt has many amazing works of ancient and modern engineering. At the south of Aswan, for example, Abu Simbel is the site of two temples. These were carved into a cliff in about 1250 BCE..

B -Translate into English :

1- عفوا هل يمكنك ان ترشدني الي افضل طريق للوصول الي المحطة؟
2- الشمس قوية جدا و عليك الا تنظر اليها مباشرة.

01000453264 01287277089